User Guide - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW Introduction

Key Features Add-On Components Terminology

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

DEPLOYMENT - EXCHANGE SERVER AGENTS

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

GETTING STARTED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED RECOVER - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

ADVANCED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

Understanding the CommCell Console

Change the Target Mailbox

Configuring Archives by Date

Older than a Specific Date After a Specific Date

Configuring Archives of All Mailboxes

Configuring Archives of Disabled Mailboxes

Configuring a Subclient

Filtering Subclients

Exclude Specific Mailboxes Filter Mailboxes using Regular Expressions Filter Specific Folders

Specifying Domain Information

Enhancing Mailbox Discovery Using CSVDE Filter

Disabling Compliance Archiving

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

ADVANCED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

Scheduling an Archive Job

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

ADVANCED RECOVER - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

Retrieving Messages to a Target Mailbox

Retrieving Messages to a PST file

Finding and Retrieving

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Restoring a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Retrieval

Retrieving to a Different Exchange Server Version

Scheduling a Retrieval

Restore By Jobs

Managing Retrieval Jobs Restarting Jobs

Controlling Jobs

Additional Restore Options

DATA AGING - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

ADDITIONAL OPERATIONS - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT

TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT ARCHIVE

TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT RECOVER

ONLINE HELP

Overview - Exchange Archiver Agents

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction Key Features Add-On Components Terminology

INTRODUCTION

WHERE TO GO NEXT

Install the Exchange Agents Walks you through the process of installing the Exchange Agents.

The Exchange Archiver Agents provide a seamless vehicle for moving old or infrequently used mailbox items to secondary storage. In doing so, regular backups of more vital Exchange data are more efficient, costs are saved by freeing up primary disk space, and end-user mailboxes become easier to manage. Added options for Outlook integration, compliance searches, and reporting help ensure all archived Exchange data is easily traceable and retrievable whenever the need arises.

KEY FEATURES

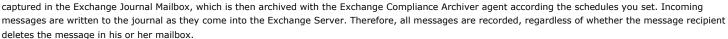
The Exchange Archiver Agents offer the following key features:

COMPREHENSIVE MAILBOX AND PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVE AND RECOVERY OPTIONS

The Exchange Mailbox and Public Folder Archiver Agents seamlessly move messages meeting specified criteria to secondary storage. Optionally, archived messages can be replaced with special header icons in the original mailbox, known as stubs, which contain information for recovery. Users can double-click the message stub in Outlook or Outlook Web Access (OWA) to recover the original message. Alternatively, users can also ask the administrator to browse the CommCell Console to recover the message.

SEARCH OPTIONS FOR COMPLIANCE USERS

Exchange Compliance Archiver works in conjunction with the message journaling feature of Microsoft Exchange Server software to archive all incoming and outgoing messages and attachments. All incoming messages and outgoing messages are



The archived data remains available for retrieval for the length of time set by the retention rules. During this period the data is readily available for access and retrieval by authorized users. They can retrieve duplicate copies from the archive, which remains under the management of the Storage Policy. All archived data is protected from any edit or alteration from all users within the context of the archival system (i.e., the archived data on the storage media cannot be written to or altered).

ADD-ON COMPONENTS

OUTLOOK ADD-IN

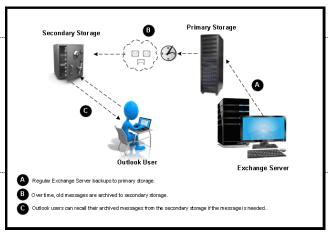
Outlook Add-In fully integrates with Microsoft Outlook to provide users with a convenient way to browse, search and recover mailbox items directly from Outlook. All mailbox entities, including messages, attachments, calendar items, and notes, are retrievable from either the locally installed Outlook application or the Outlook Web Access web browser application.

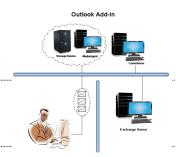
DESKTOP BROWSE

Desktop Browse enables users to browse and restore data from a Web Browser, which provides the facility to access and restore data from anywhere.

CONTENT INDEXING AND SEARCH

Content Indexing and Search enables users to content index their data and later search the data from a user-friendly web interface. The users can also perform restore operations or other advanced actions on the searched data.





TERMINOLOGY

The Microsoft Exchange Server *i*DataAgent documentation uses the following terminology:

DATADACE	Includes all operational elements of the Exchange Server, such as Stores, Transaction Logs, Patch Files, and Exchange Organizational Data.
	A computer other than the Exchange Server on which the Mailbox and Public Folder <i>i</i> DataAgents may be installed. Using a non- Exchange Server often results in less overhead on the Exchange Server during backup and restore operations.
	An association between two entities used in Automatic Discovery scenarios. For example, automatic discovery of mailboxes by database affinity implies the mailbox is included in the selected database.

System Requirements - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

System Requirements Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2013 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

500 MB minimum of hard disk space for software.256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:

- directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
- as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

Deployment - Exchange Server Agents

PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION

The Microsoft Exchange Server Agents can be installed individually or in any combination. However, your installation options will differ depending on your environment and the combination of Agents you intend to install.

To ensure you select the appropriate installation option for your environment, first compile the following information:

EXCHANGE AGENTS TO BE INSTALLED

For complete protection, it is recommended all Agents be installed in your environment.

EXCHANGE SERVER VERSION

The Exchange Server Version can be 2010, 2007, or 2003.

WILL THE AGENTS BE INSTALLED ON THE EXCHANGE SERVER?

You can install Agents on the Exchange Server or another computer (Non-Exchange Server). The Database iDataAgent, however, must be installed on the Exchange Server.

IS THE COMPUTER 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

Whether installing on the Exchange Server or a Non-Exchange Server, the bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WHAT VERSION OF OUTLOOK IS INSTALLED ON THE COMPUTER?

Outlook must be installed on the computer for all Agents except the Database iDataAgent and can be version 2010 or 2007.

IS THE OUTLOOK VERSION 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

The Outlook bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WILL YOU BE INSTALLING THE AGENTS IN A CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT?

INSTALLATION OPTIONS

Once you have compiled the above information, choose the appropriate installation procedure as described in the tables below.

EXCHANGE SERVER 2013

	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON THE	EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	N/A		Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration

EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

RSION		
CHANGE SERVER		
	5 5 5	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
· · · · ·	5 5 5	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
	ook 2010 64-bit	book 2010 64-bitInstall the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007book 2010/2007Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007

64-bit Exchange Server	N/A	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

SERVER SETUP	ουτιοοκ	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
	VERSION		
INSTALLING ON THI	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	32-bit		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	64-bit	or 2007	Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder

EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

SERVER SETUP	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON TH	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
Exchange Server	Not Required	Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
Exchange Server - Cluster		Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A I	NON-EXCHANGE SERVER	ł	
Non-Exchange Server		Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007

Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a System Requirements network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to function in an off-host proxy configuration.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

з.

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer

Select the required language.

Click Next.

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run **Setup.exe** from the Software Installation Package.

Select the language you will use during installation.
English (United States)
Next > Cancel

 Install Adobe Acrobat Reader Exit
Installer License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 90.0 (including Microsoft@ SQL Server ¹⁰⁴ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server ¹⁰⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Eval House Venues Assessment C accept the terms in the license agreement. C do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer

4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

 Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

9. Click Next.

Installer	
Select Platforms	
Select the platforms you want to configure.	
C Move the pointer over a	1
Common Technology Engine DommServe Modules	m and
Common Serve Modules reasons why it may be disabled.	
🛨 🛅 MediaAgent Modules	
Client Modules Disk Space	
Content Indexing and Search (Req/Recommended)	
Web Based Search & Browse Installation Folder:	
Carchive Management OMB/0MB OMB/0MB	
E Contribution additional representation Temporary on C: drive Temporary on C: drive	5:
Cn Supporting Modules OMB/0MB OMB/0MB	
Installer Special Registry Keys II	n Use
	. 1
Install Agents for Restore Only < Back Next > Cance	=
Installer	
Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services	
Configure in VMdII SCI MUCS	
If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services be	DW.
Configure firewall services	
Please specify how Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to ope	n
connection from here to a CommServe's lunnel port, whether all connections toward CommServe are blocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to	this
machine, or whether there is a Proxy in between.	
C This machine can open connection to CommServe on tunnel port	
C CommServe can open connection toward this machine	
C CommServe is reachable only through a proxy	
Installer	
Next > Cance	el
Installer	X
	X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host	
CommServe Name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Camputer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com)	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Camputer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com)	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Camputer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com)	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Camputer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com)	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name Enter a valid, full-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name Enter a valid, full-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer <	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer <	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enter a valid, fully-cualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com mpcomputer.mpcompany.com Installer www.searchitec.com Installer	
CommServe Name Speckly the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enders valid, full-provided, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Cance Installer Comminication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Emerserve Host Name Emerserve Host Name Emerserve Host Name Impcomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Speckly the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enders valid, full-provided, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Cance Installer Comminication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specky the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Flort Name Enter a valid, tub/populatiod, IP host name; for example: mycomputer, mycompany, com Installer Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Emerserve Host Name Emerserve Host Name Emerserve Host Name Impcomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mycompany.com mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name CommServe Client Name Enter Value Installer Installer Installer Setup will configure the communication paths. Select a client name Enter Select a client name Enter Select a client name Enter Value Se	
Specify the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enter a valid, tuip-sublide, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com Installer Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.	
CommServe Name Speciely the CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com Installer Installer Setup will configure the communication paths:	
CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mpcomputer.mpcompany.com mycomputer.mpcompany.com Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths. Setup will configure the communication paths.	

10. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	Instatter
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Repots.
	Client group:
	None Selected
	cient_group
	Installer Kext> Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	I⊄ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once
	♥ Weekly ♥ Weekly ♥ Monday ♥ Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	⊂ Sunday
	Installer
	< Back Next > Cancel

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Installer				
Storage Policy Selection				
Select a storage policy for the default sub backed up.	client to be			
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba				
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba	скир			
Select a storage policy from the pu	II-down list.			
Unassigned				
Installer				
Installer	< Back	 Next>	-	Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next>		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >]_	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection		Next >		Cancel
Installer		Next >] _	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >		Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- backet arise	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- backet arise	olient to be	Next>		Cancel

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 24.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- **15.** Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backu Please select a defa	
C Differenti	ial Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service ance the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs.
Increment	ntal Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then purged.
Installer	Kack Next> Cancel
Enter Administrat Enter Administrator a	tor account information account information
	Account Name:
	Account Password:
	Domain: EXCH
	Next>

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

20. Click Next.

Installer		×
Exchange Server Name		
Please provide Exchange serve	er name	
Exc	e Server change Server Name: change_Server change Server Version	-
	change 2007	•
Installer		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext	> <u>C</u> ancel
Installer		
Summary Summary of install selections		
Setup has enough informat install settings, click Next to	tion to start copying the program files. If yo o begin copying files.	ou are satisfied with the
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	×
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	× ×

- **21.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.

• Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

• **Domain** - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer	\mathbf{X}
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Exchange account information rea the information supplied.	uired below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Installer — — — < Ba	ck Next > Cancel

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Finish.

Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
Installer
Installer 🛛 🔀
Completion Report Setup complete
Software installation completed successfully. (Nait the vebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Packs. Click Finish to complete Setup.



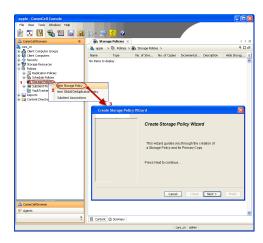
If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 24. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.



- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

• Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

25. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

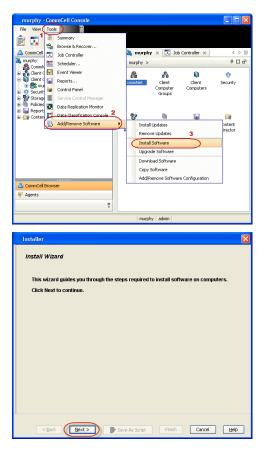
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.

Select Windows.
 Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

6. Click Next.

Cancer Beth
Installer
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
select now to discover the computers for instanting the software
Manualy select computers
Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
 Automatically discover computers
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
<back next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>
<back (next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>
Installer
Enter the host names of the computers
Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line
viri00ex07.iddab.loc Import from File
Import From Active Directory
Select from existing clients
< Back Next > ■ Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select Software Cache
To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
Override Software Cache
Software Cache: murphy.domain.company.com
<back next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>
The The The The The The The

Select the computer's operating system

Windows
 Unix and Linux

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

Installer					
Enter Account Information					
The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing					
multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.					
Reuse Active Directory credentials					
User Name:					
Example:domain/username					
Password:					
Confirm Password:					
<u>/</u>					
<back next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>					
Installer					
Select Package(s) to Install					
Survey & Reingely & Mattern S. Saver & Doss/gent 					
Saf for Music Saf for Music System Disadjent MySQL Disadjent					
Constantiation (See Englishing) Constantiation (See Englishing) Constantiation (See Englishing) Constantiation (See Englishing)					
Exchange Web Folder Datagent Exchange Offline Mining Tool Dub Mines					
Lotus Notes Database DataAgent					
Control (Control Control Control) Control (Control) Control Control (Control) Control (Control) Control Contro Control Contro					
Conice Context Looking for Exchange					
Class Netse Addy in Glass Class Control (Control (Contro) (Control (Control (Contro)(Control (Control (Contro) (Contro)(
Exchange Mallow Archiver Agent					
<back next=""> ■ Save As Script Pitch Cancel Help</back>					
installer 💌					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Recommended Settings Cleant Groups Available: Selected;					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Percommended Settings Cenet Groups Available: Selected:					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Percommended Settings Client Groups Avsidoe: Avsidoe: Avsidoe: Avsidoe Avsidoe					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Fectomended Settings Citent Groups Available: Laptor Add Al >> Common Add Al >> Common C					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Sattings for the selected Software Enter Recommended Sattings Enter the install Options for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Clent Groups Available: Selected: Available: Gold Alexa Gold Alexa					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Clenk Groups Available: Selected: Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Clenk Groups Available: Configure For Laptop Backup: Concert Parket Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Concert Parket Market Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Support Socie: Enclampetorve: Information (Dytomal) 					
Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Sattware Enter Recommended Sattings Cleat Groups Saturation Cleat Groups Compare For Lapto Backge For the Install Options for the solected Software Aper Specify Sattage Compare Information (Optiona) Server Form For Some Software Aper Specify Sattage Compare Inform Compar					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Clenk Groups Available: Selected: Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Clenk Groups Available: Configure For Laptop Backup: Concert Parket Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Concert Parket Market Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Support Socie: Enclampetorve: Information (Dytomal) 					
Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Sattware Enter Recommended Sattings Cent Groups Sattings Cent Groups Century Cent					
Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Software Enter Recommended Sattings Cellent Groups Available: Available: Available: Available: Available: Available: Add Al >> Cellent Groups Add Al >> A					
Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Software Enter Recommended Sattings Cleft Groups Software Compare For Lapta Badges Sorage Folky to use Compare Folk (Recommended Software Approx Specify Software Compare Software Information (Optional) Sof					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Chent Groups Available: Configure For Leptop Bachage: Storage Failer to use Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Apert Societ: Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Apert Societ: BachangeScrewer Information (Dptions) Sore None: BachangeScrewer Information (Dptions) Sore None: BachangeScrewer Information (Dptions) Configure Patience: Profits trage: Disc					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software					

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9. Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**. **NOTES**:
 - Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.

Enter Additional Install Options				
G Installer Flags				
V Install Updates				
Rebot (I required)				
Kill Browser Processes (if required)				
Ignore Running Jobs				
Stop Orade Services (F required)				
Skip clients that are already part of the CommCell component				
Advanced Options				
Delete Packages After Install				
Ignore Client/Host Name Conflict				
Instal Result Log Location				
Install Agents For Restore Only				
Optional Settings				
Job Result Directory Path				
CND Part BH00 -				
Evengrc Port 8402				
Instal Directory				
Log File Location				
CommServe Host Name				
< [gook [gook] Save As Script Finish Cancel [gob				
Save Care Law Care Care Care Care				
Installer 🔀				
Please Select When To Run The Job				
Job Initiation				
(Immediate				
Run this job now				
Configure Schedule Pattern Configure				
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help				
Installer X				
Summary				
Summary Rease worky all the selected optons and disk Firich to run the job immediately or dick Save Ac Sarpt to save the job optons as a sarpt.				
Summary Please werk y all the selected options and dick Frieh to run the job immediately or dick Seve As Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clease Install Option				
Summary Nease very's all the selected options and dick Fresh har un the job immediately or dick Save As Societ to save the job options are a societ. Classe linestal Option Select Type Of Installintian: Windows				
Summary Pease werk yil the selected optones and dick Fresh to run the job mmediately or dick Sere Ac Sorpt to save the job optones as a scopt. Cleard Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Cleanst Discovery: Managaly select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM Agents already installed: Yes				
Summary Please with a life selected options and did. Finds to run the job immediately or did. Save Ad Societ to save the job options as a societ. Clear the Install Option Select Type of Climatilitation: Windows Reare Active Directory or demandation already installed: Yes Rearee Active Directory contention: 10 10				
Summary Reservery at the selected gators and ddl. Frishtor un the job mmeddely or ddl. Swe Ar Sorpt to save the job gators are a sorpt. Clered Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Wardows Clered Analysis at levely installed: Yes Reuse Arthor Piercity errodentials: No Clered Anthenication for Job				
Summary Please werk yill the selected options and dith Freich to run the job inmediately or dick Serie Ar Script to save the job options are a script. Clear Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Wradows Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installet: Yes Reuse Active Directory redentials: No Class Anthentiction for Job User Name: IICLAPMentinistrator				
Summary Pease with all the selected options and did. Finds to run the job inmediately or did. Save A6 Solpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Cleant Install Option Select Type Of Installaktine: Windows Select Type Of Cleant Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rester Active Directory credentials: No Cleant Asthemiciation for Job User Nume: IDCLAPMunistrator Parsmont: ****				
Summary ReserverY all the selected gators and ddl. Frichtor un the job mmeddedy or ddl. Swe Ac Sopt to save the job options as a sorpt. Class Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Wasdows Select Type Of Class Discovery: Manually refect computers Exhibited discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Resure Arthor Piercitory credentials: No Class Anthenication for Job User Name: ID-LAPMediationstrator Password: **** Install Flagz				
Summary Pesse wirr jut the selected gators and did Freh to run the job mmediately or did. Save A6 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Class the Instal Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chard Discovery: Maintaily select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuree Arthor Discretory or redundities: No Class Authentication for Job User Nome: ID-CLAPMentistrator Password: ***** Install Updates: Yes Reboot of requiredy: No				
Summary Please we'ry aithe selected optons and did Frieht to run the job inneddedy or did Save Ae Soriet to save the job options as a soriet. Clear Italia Option Select Type of Clean Unexamines. Windows Select Type of Clean Unexamines. No Clean Antheniciation for Job Unex None: Clean Anthenic Type Install Update: Yes Reboot (ff required): No Kull Brower Processes (ff required): No				
Summary Prese wir's afte selected gators and did Frehharun hit job mmedately or did. See A Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clear thank Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chana Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reure Arthor Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of Chana Discovery: No Clear Authentication for Job User Nume: ID-CLAP definitions Parameters Install Updates: Yes Reboot of requiredy: No Kull Browsers Processes (If required): No Kull Browser Discoverses Manually in the Installed in the Installed In				
Summary Pesse wir's af the selected gators and did Frehharun the job mediately or did. See A6 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clear thank1 Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Install Updates: Yes Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect Discover discovery: Meanally of the Chena Cell component: No Stap Chena that are already and refect Computers: No				
Summary Reservery at the selected gators and ddi Frichtorum the job mmediately or ddi Save Ac Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clered Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Wasdows Select Type Of Clean Discovery. Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentiatis: No Clered Anthenication for Job User Nume: ID-CLAPMedinistrator Passrowdi: "**** Install Elags Install Updates: Yes Reduct of requiredy: No Kill Browser Processes (If required): No Kill Browser Processes (If required): No Kill Browser After Install : No Delete Package After Install : No				
Summary Pesse wir's af the selected gators and did Frehharun the job mediately or did. See A6 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clear thank1 Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect computers Exclude discovery of Chena Discovery: Meanally refect computers Install Updates: Yes Reure Arthor Discovery: Meanally refect Discover discovery: Meanally of the Chena Cell component: No Stap Chena that are already and refect Computers: No				
Summary Pesse wirfy all the selected options and did. Firsh to run the job inmediately or did. Save A6 Solpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clear Humal Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Clean Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents alweaky installed: Yes Reme Active Directory referentiates: No Clear Advances and a Call Productions First Clear Advances and a Call Productions First Clear Advances and First Type First Clear Advances and first Productions First Clear Advances First Productions First Clear Advances First Productions First P				
Summary Pease with all the selected options and did Freichter um the job inmediately or did. Sees 46 Sopie to save the job options as a sorpe. Cheff Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chen Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rester Active Directory credentials: No Chef Authentication for 10 b User Nume: IDCLAPMathemisterator Parsonal: "Install Edge Install Updates: Yes Robot of (required): No Kull Browser Processes (if required): No Kull Browser Processes (if required): No Kull Browser Actor Install: No Chef Actages Actor Install: No Chef Chem Chef Name Collic: Yes Install Agents For Restore Only: No Chef Composition Coveride Software Cache: No				
Summary Pessa very at the selected spacer and ddd Freinharum the job mredidely or dol. Save Ac Supt to save the job spacers as a surger. Clear Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Clean Discovery: Manually relect compilers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Revue Active Directory credientials: No Clear Antensication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/Medministrator Passwort: **** Instal Flagz Install Update:: Yes Rebots of required): No Kill Browser Processes of Insquired): No Kill Browser Processes of Insquired): No Kill Browser Revue Collect: Yes Install Agents for Installed: No Clear Antensics for Installed: No Kill Browser Revues of Insquired): No Kill Browser Revues of Conducted Into Into Into Into Into Into Into Into				
Summary Rease with all the selected options and disk Friedmann the job inmediately or did. Save Ad-Societ to save the job options as a societ. Clicke Handl Option Select Type Of Cliental Discovery: Manually related compaters Exclude discovery of computers with SRM and all related compaters Exclude discovery of computers with SRM and all related to employed and and all related to employed and and all related to employed				
Summary Pease with all the selected options and did Freichter um the job inmediately or did. Sees 46 Sopie to save the job options as a sorpe. Cheff Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chen Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rester Active Directory credentials: No Chef Authentication for 10 b User Nume: IDCLAPMathemisterator Parsonal: "Install Edge Install Updates: Yes Robot of (required): No Kull Browser Processes (if required): No Kull Browser Processes (if required): No Kull Browser Actor Install: No Chef Actages Actor Install: No Chef Chem Chef Name Collic: Yes Install Agents For Restore Only: No Chef Composition Coveride Software Cache: No				
Summary Passe with y al the selected options and did Frich to run the job inmediately or did. Save Ad Societ to save the job options as a societ. Clear Install Option Select Type Of Clearal Discovery: Meanally release to computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM particle computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM particle computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM particle computers: Exclude discovery of Clearal Discovery: Meanally release Active Discovery of Clearal Discovery: Meanally release Active Discovery: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM particle computers: Exclude discovery of Clearal Discovery: Meanally release Active Discovery: Exclude discovery of Clearal Discovery: Exclude discovery of Clearal Discovery: Exclude discovery of Clearal Discovery: Exclude disco				
Summary Rease with 'a diffe selected options and deli Frichito run the job immediately or did. Save k4 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. The Initial Option Select Type Of Clean Unconvery. Meanualy related computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rease Active Directory credentials: No Clean Additionation for Job User Name: Clean Unconvery. Meanualy related to any selection of the Clean Clean Unconvergence of the Uncon				
Summary Rease with 'a dite selected options and dell'Heich to run the jok immediately or did. Save As Soriet to save the jok options as a soriet. The final Taylor of Chem Directory redenations: Windows Select Taylor of Chem Directory redenations: No Chem Anthenic Sorie Chem Directory redenation: No Chem Anthenic Chem Directory redenation: No Chem Anthenic Chem Directory and the Chem Chem Chem Chem Chem Chem Chem Ch				
Summary Rease with 'a diffe selected options and deli Frichito run the job immediately or did. Save k4 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. The Initial Option Select Type Of Clean Unconvery. Meanualy related computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rease Active Directory credentials: No Clean Additionation for Job User Name: Clean Unconvery. Meanualy related to any selection of the Clean Clean Unconvergence of the Uncon				
Summary Press wirf af the selected spaces and dd Frehth rum the job meddedly or did. See Al Script to see the job options as a sorp: Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chan Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Remer Arther Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of Chan Discovery: Manually refect Component: No Discover Discovery Chan Discovery: Manually refect Component: No Discover Discovery Chan Discovery: Manually refect Discovery of Discovery Chan Discovery: Chan Discover Chan Discover Chan Discover Discovery: Chan Discover Chan Discover Discover Discovery: Chan Discover Chan Discover Chan Discover Di				
Summary Press with all the selected spaces and did Frich to run the job mediately or did. See Al Script to see the job options as a sorpe. Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chan Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Remer Arthor Discovery: Manually refect computers Exclude discovery of Chan Discovery: Manually refect computers Install Flags Install Distance: (Per Reference of the Chan Discovery: No Exclude Discovery of Chan Discover				
Summary Pease with all the selected spaces and did Freich to run the job inmediately or did. Sees A6 Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Data Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Chem Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reverse Article Directory referencies: No Data Automatication for Job Install Type Of Treatments: No Data Automatication for Job Install Type Of Chem Discovery: Manually relect Computers: Install Type Of Chem Discovery: Manually relect Component: Install Type Of Chem Discovery: No Discover Discovery: Chem: No Discover Discovery: Chem Discovery: No Discover Discover Chem: No Discovere Discover Discover Chem				
Summary Rease with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to save the job options as a sorper. Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to Test Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to Test Base with y af the selected options and did Frich to run the job immediately or did. Save Ac Sorbe to Test Base with y af the selected options and and the selected options and and the selected options and the selected optimprice options and the selected optionselected optio				
Summary Rease with all the selected options and didi Frichilis run the job inmediately of did Save Ad Societ to save the job options as a societ. Select Type of Client Discovery: Manually relect computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM paraital all relect computers: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: E				
Summary Pease with althe selected poters and did. Fresh its run the job intrediably or did. Sees Ad-Script to sees the job options as a script. Clear Handl Option Select Type of Clean Discovery: Manually relect computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Rever Active Directory releaning: No Clear Administrators for 100 User Years: Or CLAB doctimistrator Passeout: *** Install Flags Install Highent: Yes Rever Active Discovery: No Sing Options have already and of the CommonCell component: No Diedee Packages After Install: No Clear Administrator Reverse Oday: No Sing Options have already and of the CommonCell component: No Diedee Packages After Install: Yes (Clear Administrator Install: Yes (Clear Options) Override Software Cache: No Clear Options) Override Software Cache: No Clear Options Override Software Cache: No Clear Opt				
Summary Rease with all the selected options and didi Frichilis run the job inmediately of did Save Ad Societ to save the job options as a societ. Select Type of Client Discovery: Manually relect computers: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM paraital all relect computers: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: Manually relect Computers: Exclude discovery: E				

15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job
- 18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

idol.testlab.commvault.c	om - CommCell Console			
File View Tools Windows	Help			
🏓 🗔 🖪 😼 🗉	I 🔜 👒			
CommCell Browser 9	apple ×			4 0 00
	apple >			408
All Tasks				
View 2 >	Job History	0	o 😵	n 🎒
Properties	Admin Job History Log Files 3	Client Computers	Security Storage Resources	Policies 🗸
B-00 File System	Users Logged In			4 1 1
Of Virtual Server	Schedules			4 D 8
mustang mustang File System	Fl Job ID Operation	Client Co	Agent Type Subclient	Job Type= 1 Phas S
Of Virtual Server	21 Data Aging			N/A
- 🕥 Security - 😵 Storage Resources	<			>
Policies	II Pause Playing	Runnin		
- 🔚 Reports - 🎲 Content Director				4 1 11
E M CONTENT DI ECCO	Event Viewer ×	Admin Job History	×	
		ob ID Date	v 1 Program	Q ⊡ d ³ Computer Ev S
	233		12:00:23 JobManager	apple 19:
	232	21 08/31/2010	12:00:08 JobManager	apple 19:
CommCell Browser	 231 228 		11:52:42 EvMgrS 11:46:15 DistributeSoftware	apple 35: apple 68:
🖗 Agents		20 00/31/2010	11:46:15 DistributeSoftware	apple 68:"
÷.	<	armation, Minor, Mai	or, Critical, Maximum events s	hown: 200
8 object(s)	and a start of the		apple admin	
o object(s)			appre admin	
Admin Job History F	ilter			
Job Type				
() All	🔿 Data Aging		C Export Media	
-				
 Auxiliary Copy 	 Inventory 		 Disaster Recov 	ery Backup
 Data Verification 	Offline Control	ent Indexing	🔘 Erase Media	
O Erase Backup/Archived	Data 🔿 Drive Validat	ion	O Drive Cleaning	
Stamp Media	Install/Remo	ve Updates	O Download/Cop	v Software
Stamp Media	O Install/Remo		Download/Cop SPM Reports//	
Install/Upgrade/Remove	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemen	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance		ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemen Media Refreshing	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemen	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range	Disk Library I Disk Library I CommCell Ex Recover Sto	Maintenance port re	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GM1)	e Software Disk Library I	Maintenance port re Canada)	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Instal/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: [GM1 Sart Time	Software CommCell Ex Recover Sto	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GM1)	Software CommCell Ex Recover Sto	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Instal/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: [GM1 Sart Time	Software CommCel Ex Recover Sto 0	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A	ictions
Instal/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GMI Sart Time Mon 08/30/201	Software CommCel Ex Recover Sto 0	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A CommCell Impo 08/31/2010	ictions
Instal/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GMI Sart Time Mon 08/30/201	Software CommCel Ex Recover Sto 0	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A CommCell Impo 08/31/2010	ictions
Instal/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GMI Sart Time Mon 08/30/201	Software CommCel Ex Recover Sto 0	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A CommCell Impo 08/31/2010	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemen Media Befreihing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMH Status Job Status	Software Software Disk Library / Disk Library / CommCell Ex- Recover Sto -05:00) Eastern Time (US & 1 0 -75H4	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Management Media Bathreahng Specify Time Range Time Zone: Confi Start Time Men 00202021 Start 2 Mon 00202021 Starts Sol Status O All	Software CommCel Ex Recover Sto 0	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time	SRM Reports/A CommCell Impo 08/31/2010	ictions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Managemen Media Befreihing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMH Status Job Status	Software Software Disk Library / Disk Library / CommCell Ex- Recover Sto -05:00) Eastern Time (US & 1 0 -75H4	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Lograde/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Man 00100100 Ref 200000000 Ref 2000000000000000000000000000000000000	Software Software Disk Library / Disk Library / CommCell Ex- Recover Sto -05:00) Eastern Time (US & 1 0 -75H4	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Nanagement Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: Contr Start Time Menn 00/20/2011 Ref. 22 Sob Status Al Number of Jobs O Yeav All Jobs	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Lograde/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Man 00100100 Ref 200000000 Ref 2000000000000000000000000000000000000	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Nanagement Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: Contr Start Time Menn 00/20/2011 Ref. 22 Sob Status Al Number of Jobs O Yeav All Jobs	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tom Pailed	SRM Reports// CommCel Impc CommCel Impc CommCel Impc Izz : 07 PM	ictions
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tue	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc OR/31/2010 IZ : 07 PM Kled	ktons rt
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connocal Ex- OCON Eastern Time (US 8- Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tom Pailed	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc OR/31/2010 IZ : 07794 Kiled	ktons rt
Install/bgrade/Remove Information Nonogener Modas Dafreshing Sectry Time Range Time Zone: COM Sature Sature: COM Sature Sature: Satur	Disk Larary (US & Competed Completed Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tom Pailed	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc OR/31/2010 IZ : 07 PM Kled	dons rt
Install/Legrade/Remove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO Start Time Part Of DOCIDIO	Disk Larary (US & Competed Completed Completed	Maintenance port re Canada) End Time Tom Pailed	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc OR/31/2010 IZ : 07 PM Kled	ktons rt
Indall/bgrade/Remove Information Nanagement Information Nanagement Media Rafreshing Secrity Time Range Time Zone: (Cott Secrity Time Range Information Nanagement Secrity Time Range Secrity	Software) Disk Lbrary U Connoc II E S Connoc II E	Maintenance port re Enadas) End Time Time Time Time Constant	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc Killed CarronCell CarronCelll CarronCelllll CarronCelllll CarronCelllllll Ca	ctions rt
Initial/Legade/Remove Information Nonogener Information Nonogener Media Rafreshing Secrity Time Range Time Zone: (2011) Secrity Time Range Initial Content of the Secrit Content of the Secret Content of the Sec	Software Dek Lorary D	Maintenance port re Canada) End Tame C Failed	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc Killed CarronCell CarronCelll CarronCelllll CarronCelllll CarronCelllllll Ca	ctons rt et Help et Help
Initial/Upgrade/Itemove Information Management Information Management Media Refreshing Sectiv Time Range Tree Zone: Control Sectiv Time Range S	Software) Disk Library 1 Connoc ef Ex -05:00) Eastern Time (US & 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Maintenance port re Enadas) End Time Time Time Time Constant	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc Killed CarronCell CarronCelll CarronCelllll CarronCelllll CarronCelllllll Ca	ctions rt
Indall/bgrade/Remove Information Nanagement Information Nanagement Media Rafreshing Secrity Time Range Time Zone: (Cott Secrity Time Range Information Nanagement Secrity Time Range Secrity	Software) Disk Library 1 Connol E Is -0: 000 Eastern Time (US & Completed Completed Software Son Software Son Software Software Software S	Maintenance port re Enadas) End Time Time Time Time Constant	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron CarronCell Carron	ctions rt
Indall/bgrade/Remove Information Nanagement Information Nanagement Media Rafreshing Secrity Time Range Time Zone: (Cott Secrity Time Range Information Nanagement Secrity Time Range Secrity	Software) Disk Library 1 Connoc ef Ex -05:00) Eastern Time (US & 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Maintenance port re Enadas) End Time Time Time Time Constant	SRM Reports// CommCell Impc CarronCell Impc CarronCell Impc Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron Killed CarronCell Carron CarronCell Carron	ctions rt

Total records count : 9

< Previous) Next >

Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2007 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007 or on Non-Exchange Server in a clustered environment.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to
 function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:

Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

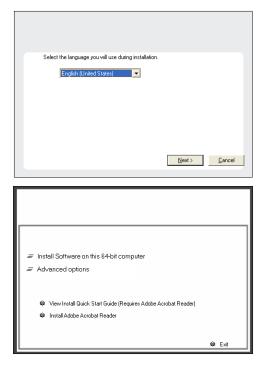
• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

- Administrator of the local computer
- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- **3.** Select the required language.

Click Next.

NOTES:

4.



5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

6. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

 Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

9. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

nstaller 🛛 🔀
License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOW/N key to view the entire agreement.
are I Add DOWN Key to her are and a ground it.
Cluster Type Selection
Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
Configure the Physical node
nstaller 🛛 🔀
Virtual Server Selection
Select the virtual server you would like to configure
Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2000Cluster/MMS 2000Cluster/MMS < Back
nstaller 🛛 🕅
Select Platforms
Select the platforms you want to configure.
□ Common Technology Engine □ Contence □ Contence □ Continue DataReplicator □ Continue DataReplicator □ Continue DataReplicator

Installer

Install Agents for Restore Only

< Back

Special Registry Keys In Use

Cancel

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

machine,	or whether	there is a Proxy i						
🖲 This ma	achine can	open connection		erve or				
C CommS	erve can c	pen connection	toward this		0			
C CommS	erve is rea		igh a proxy					
t								
Inst	aller					Next >		Cancel
						1101117		
								_
nstaller								×
CommServ Specify the name		e computer name	e and host					
Co	ommServe	Client Name						
(E	nter a valid	Host Name I, fully-qualified, If mycompany.com	^o host name I	; for ex	ample:			
m	ycomputer	mycompany.com	ı					
Inst	aller							
			< Ba	ck		Next >		Cancel
nstaller								X
	ation In	terface Nam	,					
		e communication						
		Select a client i	name					
		audi_cn					•	
		Select an interf communicate w	ace name ti ith the Com	nat this mServe	compu B	uter will us	e to	
		audi.mycompa	ny.com				•	
		IP Address(es)	for the selei	cted ha	ist.			
Inst	aller		-		_		_	
			< Ba	СК		Next >		Cancel
nstaller								×
		Exclusion Li municate through						
Windov	vs Firewall i	is ON						
✓ Add	l programs	to the Windows I	Firewall Exc	lusion l	_ist			
lf you p exclusio	lan on usin on list.	g Windows Firew	vall, it is reco	ommeni	ded to	add the so	oftware p	rograms to the

< Back

Next:

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
		Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alterr Destination Folder
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client.
	CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer
15.	Click Next.	Installer
		Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates Image: Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Image: Once Image: Weekly Image: Weekly Image: Once Image: Once <td< th=""></td<>
		L
16.	Select a Storage Policy . Click Next .	Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Installer Kack Next>
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer Storage Palicy Selection
	Click OK .	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	T Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

X

ate location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

< Back Next >

X

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backup Option	ns
Please select a default backup	
C Differential	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup, Does not purge the
	transaction logs.
Incremental	Backs up changes in the Information
, marchiorika	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then
	purged.
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	×
Enter Administrator acco	
Enter Administrator account info	ormation
Account	Name
Account	tano.
A	Deserved.
Account	Password:
Domain:	
EXCH	
	Next > Cancel
Installer	
Summary Summary of install selections	
culturing of mode could(0)	
0 • • • • • • • • •	
Setup has enough informati install settings, click Next to	ion to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the begin copying files.
	<u></u>
Destination Path = C:\Prog	ram Files\
CommServe Host = mycom	puter.mycompany.com
Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi	
Job Results Path = C:\Prog	
Global Filters = Use Cell lev	<u>×</u>
<	<u>></u>
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Please verify that Gr backup operations.	cular Logging is disabled before performing any database
backup operations.	
	ОК

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer Pease provide Exchange Server Name Pease provide Exchange Server Name Exchange Server Name Exchange Server Name Exchange Server Name Installer Exchange Server Version Summary Summary Summary Summary Destination Path = C:\Program Flext CommServe Host = myconguter mycongeny com Install settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying the program files. If you are satisfied with Account Name Exchange Server Name:		
Please provide Exchange server name	Installer	×
Please provide Exchange server name		r Name
Exchange Server Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of intall selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install setup, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C: VProgram Files \ CommServe Host = mycontrouter mycompany.com Interface Next to begin copying files. Use baller Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Profile Name: Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password Exchange Server Name: Maibox Name for this Account. Domain: Installer Domain:		
Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency, click Next to begin copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency of the setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial setings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ Commission Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Installer Vestaller Exchange Administrator Account Maibox and Profile information Account Name: Profile Name:	T loade provide Ene	naige of the name
Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency, click Next to begin copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency of the setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial setings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ Commission Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Installer Vestaller Exchange Administrator Account Maibox and Profile information Account Name: Profile Name:		
Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency, click Next to begin copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency of the setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial setings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ Commission Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Installer Vestaller Exchange Administrator Account Maibox and Profile information Account Name: Profile Name:		
Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency, click Next to begin copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency of the setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial setings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ Commission Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Installer Vestaller Exchange Administrator Account Maibox and Profile information Account Name: Profile Name:		
Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Summary Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency, click Next to begin copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial selency of the setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial setings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ Commission Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Installer Vestaller Exchange Administrator Account Maibox and Profile information Account Name: Profile Name:		
Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Version Summary Summary of initial relections Setup has enough information to stat copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial relections Destination Path = C-VPlogram Files. CommServe Host = and procomposing your my company.com threat and the analysis of the end of the sate of the sat		Exchange Server
Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Exchange Server Version Installer Version Summary Summary of initial relections Setup has enough information to stat copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial relections Destination Path = C-VPlogram Files. CommServe Host = and procomposing your my company.com threat and the analysis of the end of the sate of the sat		Exchange Server Name:
Exchange Server Version Exchange 2007 Installer		
Installer		
Installer		Evchance Server Version
Installer		
< Back		Exchange 2007
< Back		
Installer Image: Comparison of the com	Installer	
Installer Image: Comparison of the com		< Back Next> Cancel
Summary Summary of initial selections Satup has enough information to stat copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files\ CommServe Host = mycoroputer.mycoropary.com Interface Name = audi.mycoropary.com Click 1 = audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Central Click 1 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Maibox and Profile Information Exchange Server Name: Central Click 1 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Account Name: Central Click 1 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Central Click 2 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Central Click 1 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Central Click 2 = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer		
Summary Summary of initial selections Satup has enough information to stat copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files\ CommServe Host = mycoroputer.mycoropary.com Interface Name = audi.mycoropary.com Click 1 = audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailtow and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information suppled. Account Name: Account Password Exchange Server Name: Installer		
Summary Summary of initial selections Satup has enough information to stat copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files\ CommServe Host = mycoroputer.mycoropary.com Interface Name = audi.mycoropary.com Click 1 = audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Interface Name = Audi.mycoropary.com Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailtow and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information suppled. Account Name: Account Password Exchange Server Name: Installer	1	
Summary of initial relections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying lies. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files \ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Instrates Name = aud.mycompany.com Distert = aud Dob Results Path = C-VProgram Files \ Destination Path = D-VProgram Files \ Destination Path = D-VProgram Files \ Destination Path = C-VProgram Files \ Destination Destination Pathogen Administrator Account Information Pathogen Administrator Account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information suppled. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Name Exchange Server Name: Demain: Installer Demain: Installer Demain: Dema	mstatter	
Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files.1 CommiServe Host = myconequiter mycome program yoom Destination Path = C-VProgram Files.1 CommiServe Host = myconequiter mycome program yoom Order and myconequiter mycome program you CommiServe Host = nucleon proceedings you CommiServe Host = Level policy Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information required below. A new profile will be created with the information suppled. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer Installer	Summary	
Installer	Summary of install :	elections
Installer		
Installer		
Destination Path = C VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer ingrcompany.com Tirefrace Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi. Job Results Path = C VProgram Files/VoOResults Gibbal Filers = Use Cell evel policy Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Piofile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information suppled. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Passwond: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer Installer	Setup has enou	ugh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
	instali settings,	cick Next to begin copying nes.
		A
	Destination Pat	h = C:\Program Files\ et = micemputer micempany.com
	Interface Name	= audi.mycompany.com
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Maibox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information uppled. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password Exchange Server Name: Maibox Name for this Account Domain: Installer Installer	Ulient = audi	
Installer		
Installer	Gibbai Fillers -	ose cell level policy
	<	>
	Installer	
Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Maibox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information upplied. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Installer		(Deals News) Coursel
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Installer		K Back Next> Cancer
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Installer		
Exchange Administrator Account Information Maibox and Profile information Please exter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer		_
Information Maibox and Profile information Plase exter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name:	Installer	
Information Maibox and Profile information Plase exter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name:	Euchongo Admi	nistrator Assount
Maibox and Ptofile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Account Password: Account Password: Domain: Installer		nistrator Account
Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Mailbox Name for this Account: Installer		information
the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Maibox Name for this Account: Installer	mailbox and i tonie	linimation
the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Maibox Name for this Account: Installer		
Account Name: Profile Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Maibox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer	Please enter the Ex	change account information required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Account Password: Domain: Maibox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer	the information sup	plied.
Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Account Password: Domain: Maibox Name for this Account: Domain: Installer	Account Name:	Profile Name:
Maibox Name for this Account Domain:	Account mante.	
Maibox Name for this Account Domain:		
Maibox Name for this Account Domain:	Account Pro-	Euchanza Corus Name
Installer	Account assword	Exchange Server Marie.
Installer		
Installer	54 M 55	
	Mailbox Name for t	his Account: Domain:
< Back Next > Cancel	Installer	
		<back next=""> Cancel</back>

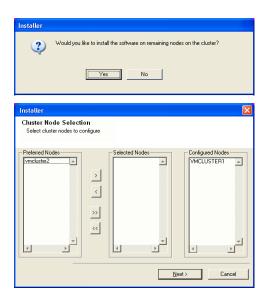
INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click Yes.To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.



- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.
 - Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

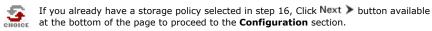
	Account Password:
L	
	< Back Next > Cancel
	Canco
Installe	er
	can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in
progr	ess will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Clie	ent Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description
real	2
I	
	alled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 ed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max. 1 ==
	ised time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
	Installer
Ad	dvanced Settings Stop
	me to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 🔮 minutes
Installe Resul	
	to install results
Sum	imary of remote install
	following software (Version) were selected to be installed:
The	
	L2: Install succeeded.
REA	
REA	L2 Instal succeeded.
REA	L2 Initial succeeded
REA Installe Sched	L2 Initial succeeded
REA Installe Sched	L2 Initial succeeded.
REA Installe Sched Job sc	L2 Install succeeded.
REA Installe Sched Job sc	L2 Install succeeded
REA Installe Sched Job sc Y H	L2 Install succeeded.
REA Installe Sched Job sc F Y H J a	L2 Install succeeded.
REA Installe Sched Job sc F Y H J a	L2 Install succeeded.

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admin

Domain Account Information

Software i	stallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Pa	acks.
Click Finis	n to complete Setup.	



If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 31. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

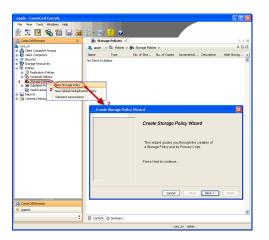
 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007



Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packag	
Provides step-by-step procedure packages for software install.	e to download the latest

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- To assign full access follow the steps given below:
- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

• Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE /DATAAGENT

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- **1.** Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server

2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

4.	Select the option t	o Install	Calypso on	this	64-bit	computer
	o choce the option t				• • • • •	

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5.	$eq:select_sele$
	Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.
English (United States)
Next > Cancel
 Install Software on this 64-bit computer Advanced options
 View Install Quick. Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader Exit
Installer
License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server TM 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server TM 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Evel How I forces Assumed
C I accept the terms in the license agreement. I do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer
< Back Next > Cancel

6. Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database *i*DataAgent.

	Installer
	Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
	Common Technology Engine Common Technology Engine Common Technology Engine Common Hoddles CommCell Console Modelsepert Modules
	Client Models Direct
	Web Based Search & Browse Installation Folder: D Archive Management OMB/0 MB OMB/0 MB
	B □ SRM C SRM C Supporting Modules D Tools V 0 MB
	Install Agents for Restore Only < Back Next> Cancel
this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configur	e Installer
rewall services option and then click Next.	Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services
r firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and ntinue with the installation.	
firewall configuration is not required, click Next .	If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below. Configure firewall services
	Please specify how Windows Firewall is finiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open connection from here to a CommServe's turnel port, whether all connections toward CommServe are blocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this machine, or whether there is a Provy in between.
	 This machine can open connection to CommServe on turnel port CommServe can open connection toward this machine
	C Commission contraction contraction of the mount of the mount of C
	Installer Next > Cancel
ter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.	Installer 🔀
ck Next.	CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host
Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new	specary the commiserve comparent name and not in name
name for the CommServe Host Name:	CommServe Client Name
\ `~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"	CommServe Host Name [Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com)
	my-computer.my-company.com
	Installer
	<pre>states</pre> Cancel
ck Next.	Installer
	Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	Select a client name
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the ComnServe
	eudi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
	Installer < Back Next > Cancel

8. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Ho

Click Next.

7.

9. Click Next.

Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion 10. programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	Instatter
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Repots.
	Client group:
	None Selected
	cient_group
	Installer Kext> Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	I⊄ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once
	♥ Weekly ♥ Weekly ♥ Monday ♥ Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
	Installer
	< Back Next > Cancel

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. 🔲 Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list. -Unassigned Installe < Back Next> Cancel If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. nillo rage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subcl ent to be Click OK. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21. Next > Cancel Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the 15. Installe following options, then click Next. Exchange Backup Options Please select a default backup type • Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged. • Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs. C Differential only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged. Incremental p changes in the minimum ad Directory Service since the kup or Incremental backup. ad transaction logs are then Installer <Back Next> Cancel 16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation. Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information • The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges. • The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can Account Name modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in. Account Passwo Cancel 17. Click Next. Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. ^ Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Global Filters = Lise Cell level notice * Installer < Back Next > Cancel

Installer

18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

×

disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.



Installer	\mathbf{X}
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.	
Installer	2mm2
Installer	
Completion Report Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully. Viait the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs. Click Finish to complete Setup.	4
Installer Technical Support Website	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

5

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

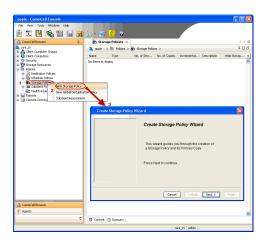
Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- Select **Yes** to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

• If you want to install Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent, Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver



and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver), click Create the Registry Keys.

 If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the Configuration section.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

22. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

Select the language you will use during installation. English (United States)	
	Next > Cancel
≕ Software install options	⊜ Esal

24. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

25. Select the required language. Click **Next**.

23.

26. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.
NOTES

• This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

27. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. **28.** Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 29. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

Note that the Exchange Database *i*DataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent for stepby-step procedure.

30. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

License Agr	
Please read th the PAGE DO	ne following License Agreement. Press WN key to view the entire agreement.
001102.00	
	3
En	d User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
	Software Release 9.0.0
(includin	ng Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
200	8 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
	Fud Hoov I isonaa Agmamant 🛛 🗹
I accept	the terms in the license agreement.
	accept the terms in the license agreement.
Install	-
	< Back Next> Cancel
nstaller	
	nce Selection
Please specify	the instance you want to use during
install.	
	Instance Selection
	 Create a new instance (Not recommended)
	Install to existing instance
	Select an installed instance.
	Client Name
	Client Host Name
	CommServe Name
Install	er
	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	
Select Platfo	
Select Platfo	orms Iforms you want to configure.
Select Platfo Select the pla	tforms you want to configure.
Select Platfo Select the plat	tforms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a
Select Platfic Select the plat — Cor 	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfor Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	forms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a CommServe Modules CommCell Console
Select Platfo Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	torms you want to configure. Innon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommServe Modules MediaAgent Modules Didu Cesse
Select Platfo Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	troms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules Rackup & Recovery Disk Space Dis
Select Platfa Select the plat Comparison C	torms you want to configure. Innon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommServe Modules MediaAgent Modules Didu Cesse
Select Platfa	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfe Select the plat	troms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommServe Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules Rackup & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse Anchive Management OMP/OMB Temporary on C: drive:
Select Platfi Select the plat	troms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCel Console MediaAgent Modules Context Indexing and Search Web Basel Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuousDate Replicator SFM Supporting Modules
Select Platfi Select the plat © Cor © Cor	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Con Con	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Con Con	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Con Con	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Constant of t	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Constant Const	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Correction of the plat of the plat Correction of the plat of the p	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Constant Const	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Correction of the plat of the plat Correction of the plat of the p	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Construction Construction Construction Configure firev	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure field Configure fired Configure fired If there is a fir	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure field Configure fired Configure fired If there is a fir	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure fire Configure fire Firewall Configure fire Plane spec	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules mediaAgent Modules Backury & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuouDDate Replacion SMM Disk Space Per Supporting Modules Back Recovery ContinuouDDate Replacion SMM MB / 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use figuration figuration figuration figures firewall services
Select Platfi Select the plat Compared to the plat Configure firet Configure firet Configure firet	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules Backup A Recovery Content Indexing and Seach Web Based Seach & Browse Archive Management ContinuousUBAR pelocidor SRM Supporting Modules as er Sup
Select Platfi Select the plat Compared to the plat Configure firet Configure firet Configure firet	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules mediaAgent Modules Backury & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuouDDate Replacion SMM Disk Space Per Supporting Modules Back Recovery ContinuouDDate Replacion SMM MB / 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use figuration figuration figuration figures firewall services
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure the plat Co	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules Backup A Recovery Content Indexing and Seach Web Based Seach & Browse Archive Management ContinuousUBAR pelocidor SRM Supporting Modules as er Sup

Installer

31. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

Next>

Cance

32. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

33. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

34 Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

35. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

nstaller	
CommServe Nam	
	rve computer name and host
name	
CommServe	e Client Name
J	
CommServe	e Host Name Ilid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:
mycompute	inu, rung-quanneu, re nosc name, ror example. er.mycompany.com)
mycomput	er. mycompany. com
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	Carbon Carbon
taller	
ommunication I	
Jecup will configure t	he communication paths.
	Coloria di stati anno
	Select a client name
	audi_cn
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
	audi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Installer	
matalier	< Back Next > Cancel
	< Back Next > Cancel
4-11	
taller	
'indows Firewal	
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	II Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall	mmunicate through Windows
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	mmunicate through Windows
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows
Tindows Firewall Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa ✓ Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa ✓ Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal ✓ Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Windows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewa I Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firewa I windows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller testination Folde Select the destination	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewa I dd program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer stoller estination Folde Select the destination	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the K < Back
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall ✓ Windows Firewa ✓ Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel control of the software program files. The default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
Tindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Statler Statler Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>)
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal & Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estimation Folde Select the destination	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>)
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal If Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller staller Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>) (Cancel (Seck Next>)
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa & Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer statler estination Folde Select the destination Click. Next to accept Destination Folde Netrogram Files	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel ca
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal Addu programs to co Freewall Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estination Folde Select the destination Elick. Next to accept Destination Folde ENProgram Files	Interface and a second
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal If Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Statler Estimation Folde Select the destination Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel ca
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estination Folde Select the destination Click. Next to accept Destination Folde ENProgram Fires	Interface and a second

< Back

Next>

Cancel

36. Click Next.

37. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 43.

38. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

	2
Client Group Selection Select a client group for the	
Select a client group for the	
The Clean	Crown is a lawingly exercises of alignst excelsions
which have Schedule E	Group is a logical grouping of client machines e the same associations at various levels like Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Schedule i	oiky, werving control, secondy and reports.
	t group:
None	_group
,	
Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	2
Schedule Install of Au Choose when you want to	
downloaded updates.	
✓ Schedule Install of A	utomatic Undates
C Once	Time: 09:21:12 DM
Weekly	Time: 08:31:12 PM
	Monday C Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	Σ
Storage Policy Selec	tion
Select a storage policy for	the default subclient to be
backed up.	
Configure for Laptop	or Deskton Backup
,	
Select a storage po	licy from the pull-down list.
Un	assigned 🔽
,	
,	
Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Installer	uon [5
Installer	tian Product substant to be
Installer	tian Product substant to be
Installer — Storage Policy Selec Select a torage policy for Select a up: Covigure for Lapto	tian Product substant to be
Installer	tian Product substant to be
Installer	Ilon The default substant to be p or Desktop Backup < Back. Next 5 Cancel
Installer	Iton The default substant to be p or Desktop Backup Concel
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>
Installer	the default substant to be or of Desklop Backup < Back Treat 2 Canval e ever name
Installer	Here Cancel Cancel Reack React R
Installer	the default substant to be or of Desklop Backup < Back Treat 2 Canval e ever name
Installer	The default subcliment to be or of Dealshop Backup e Back News Conneal Peerver name ange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup
Installer	The default subclimit to be or of Desktop Backup or Back New E concel Performance suppo Server Exchange Server Exchang
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup

- **40.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - Profile Name Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 41. Click Next.

42. Click Finish.

Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Cotum lane execute information to at	art copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next to begin (copying files.
	<u>^</u>
Destination Path = C:\Program File	\$/ ا
CommServe Host = mycomputer.m Interface Name = audi.mycompany	ycompany.com y.com
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program File	es VobResults
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	y 💌
 	>
Installer	Const Nuts Const
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	×
Exchange Administrator Accou Information	int
Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Exchange account in the information supplied.	formation required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
- Sourie Hand.	Trans.
Account Password:	I Exchange Server Name:
Account Password.	Exchange Server Name.
1	
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
I	
Installer	
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Installer Schedule Reminder	X
Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	X
Schedule Reminder	X
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch	Nedule for each iDateAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer.	redule for each DataAgent that has been installed on writhe DataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedule are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete	w the DataAgents to perform automated backup compliated through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedule are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed succes Visit the website below to download late Dlick Finish to complete Setup.	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console Image: Stully: stully: stully:

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 37, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

43. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

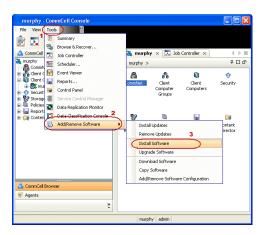
- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 44. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

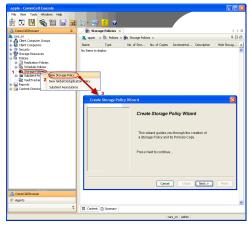
- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

 From the CommCell Browser, select Tools, point to Add/Remove Software, and then click Install Software.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

install Wizard
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.
Click Next to continue.
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer 🛛
Salast the computer's aperating when
Select the computer's operating system
() Windows
O Unix and Linux
1
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Camputers will be discovered when the job runs. Example the software of the sof
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Manualy select computers Automaticaly discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Each Back Back Script Frich Cancel Eleb Texture Enter the host names of the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software I multiply select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discoverees will be discovered when the job r
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image select computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Methods and a script Methods
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image select computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Methods and a script Methods
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select how to discover computers Automatically discover computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

Select Software Cache
To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
Override Software Cache Software Cache murphy.domain.company.com
<book mext=""> ■ Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</book>
Installer 🛛 🗙
Enter Account Information
The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
Reuse Active Directory credentials
User Name: Example:domain\username
Password:
Confirm Password:
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Intaller
Inetallar Solect Package(a) to Install
Installar Solicet Package(a) to Install Solicet Package(a) t
Installer Solect Package(s) to Install Solect Package(s) to Install Solect Package(s) to Install Solect Package(s) to Install Sole Sole Sole Sole Sole Sole Sole Sole
Installer Solicel Package(s) to Install Solicel Package(s) to Install Solicel Package(s) to Install Solice Package(s) to Install Composition Barbarder Solice Package Composition Barbarder Compositio
Inetalizy Solect Package(s) to Install 3,5 Seve Geological 4 of order 4 of or
Installer Select Packbage(4) to Install Select Packbage(4) to Install Control Part Produce Control Part Pr
Installar Select Packape(c) fo Install Control of the select of the se
Initializy Solicet Package(s) to Instal/ () Some Orderadoret () Some
Initializy Solicet Package(s) to Instal/ () Some Orderadoret () Some
Installar Select Packap(c) for Install Control Control Control
Installar Sector Package(c) to Install Generative Construction Constr
Installer Sector Packbage(4) to Install Office of Packbage(4) to Install Office of Packbage(4) Office of Packb
Installer Sector Packbage(d) to Install Office Packbage(d) Sector Packbage(d) Sect
Installer Sector Package(s) to Install Office of Package(s) Sector Package(s) to Install Sector Package(s) to Install Sector Package(s) Sect
Installer Sector Packbage(d) to Install Office Packbage(d) Sector Packbage(d) Sect
Installer Sector Package(4) to Install Sector Package(4) to Inst
Installer Sector Partage(s) for Install Sector Partage(s) fo
Instalter Sector Packbage(s) to Install Sector Packbage(s) t
Installer Sector Packbage(d) to Install Office Order Davlaget Office Order Order Order Office Order Order Order Office Order Order Order Office Order Order Order Office Order Order Order Order Order Order Order Office Order Orde
Inteller Secter Faschage(s) to Install Secter Faschage(s) to
Installer Sector Package(s) to Install Office Characteristics Sector Package(s) to Install Sector Package(s) t
Inteller Secter Faschage(s) to Install Secter Faschage(s) to
Installer Sector Package(s) to Install Office Characteristics Sector Package(s) to Install Sector Package(s) t
Installer Sector Package(s) to Install Office Characteristics Sector Package(s) to Install Sector Package(s) t

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

Agent Specific Settings					
Components					
	information (Optional)				
Server Name win08					
Exchange Profile				Configure Passe	and 1
Malbox Name				Congressi	iora
Profile Name					
😑 Exchange Databa					
User Account IDCLA				Configure Passe	iord
O Differential Backup					
 Incremental Backu 	p				
	<gack< td=""><td>Next ></td><td>Save As Script</td><td>Finish Cance</td><td></td></gack<>	Next >	Save As Script	Finish Cance	
staller					
Enter Additional Install Opt	ions				
Installer Flags					
Install Updates					
Reboot (if required)					
Kill Browser Processes (f required)				
Ignore Running Jobs					
Stop Oracle Services (F					
Skip clients that are alre	ady part of the CommCell	component			
Advanced Options					
Delete Packages After I Jgnore Client/Host Nam					
Ignore Client/Host Nam					
Install Agents For Resto					
Optional Settings					
Job Result Direct	tory				
Path					
CVD Part					8400
Evingric Port Install Directory					8402
Log File Location					
CommServe Host Name					
	< Back	Lext >	Save As Script	Pinish Cance	<u> </u>
Installer					
Please Select Wi	nen To Run T	he Job			
Job Initiation					
(Immediat	•)				
Run this jo	b now				
O Schedule					
Configure	Schedule Pattern		Configure		

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the CommServe computer, click View and then click Admin Job History.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job

Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: N_0 Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Plagi Initial Plagi Initial Updates: Yes Roboti (ff required): No Egnore Running, Ados: No Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No Stop Cate Services (ff required): No Delse Packages After Initial: No Ignore ClearchForts Name Catflics: Yes Initial Agents For Restore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installation: C <Back Ment > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help C Pause Playing St Adm M Job ID Date wing Information, Mro. 🆻 🖪 🖳 🗞 🖾 📓 🕏 ð6 🚴 apple > P 🗆 I 2 . Nier 0 Storage Admin Job H Log Files Users Logged In Schedules Fl... Job ID Operat 21 Data Agi Pause Playing Run 🛛 😥 Event Viewer 🗴 🎆 Admin Job History 🗙 19:1 19:1 35:: 68:1 apple apple apple Playing Information, Minor, Major, Critical, Maximu 30 ¥ onle admi Admin Job History Filter loh Ty O All O Data Aging O Export Media O Disaster Recovery Backup O Auxiliary Copy O Inventory O Data Verification Offline Content Indexing 🔿 Erase Media O Erase Backup/Archi O Drive Validation O Drive Cleaning Stamp Media Install/Remove Update: O Download/Copy Software Install/Upgrade/Remove Software Disk Library Maintenance O SRM Reports/Actions O CommCell Export O CommCell Import 1 O Recover Store Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Start Time End Tir ÷ Job Stab • All ◯ Killed

-ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.

Summary



O Completed

Number of Jobs View All Jobs O Desired Number of Jobs O Failed

2 OK Cancel Help

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or 64-bit Non-Exchange Server - Clustered Environment

Previous Next >

The Exchange Agents are designed to protect an entire Exchange Server database. Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or on Non-Exchange Server.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Make sure the computer satisfies the minimum requirements specified in the System Requirements.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

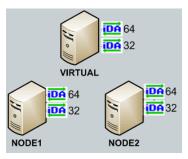
EXCHANGE AGENTS IN X64 CLUSTERS

When installing 32-bit agents on a x64 virtual server, the 32-bit File System *i*DataAgent must be installed on each physical node in the cluster prior to installing the 32-bit agents on the virtual server.

For example, to support a two-node cluster with one Exchange virtual server instance supporting both x64 and 32-bit Agents, a minimum of two installation instances (one 32-bit

and one x64) are required on the virtual server and each physical node. This configuration will result in six client objects in the CommCell console; three x64 instances and three 32-bit instances.

The sample image shown on the right illustrates the required configuration for installing 32-bit Exchange Agents in an x64 cluster.



INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE *i***DATAAGENT**

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
 - Select the required language.

Click Next.

1.

з.

4.	Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.
	NOTES:

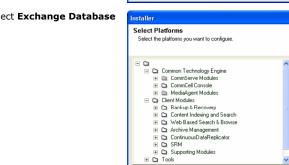
• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Click Next.

6. Click OK.

Select the language you will use during installation.
English (United States)
Next > Cancel
Install Software on this 64-bit computer
Advanced options
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
Devit
€ Ext
Installer XVelcome
Installer 🗙
Installer Xelcome The Installer will suide you through the
Installer Xelcome The Installer will suide you through the
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this
Installer Welcome The Installer will puide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Carole to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
Installer Image: Comparison of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Carnel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction of distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe coil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installer Welcome The Installe will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Carriel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it. may result in severe only and original provides, and will be prosecuted to the maximum
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Umachine and exist and any program, or any portion of it, may result in server ovid and cominal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Umachine and exist and any program, or any portion of it, may result in server ovid and cominal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installer Image: Comparison of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Carcel to quil Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unsubhorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penahies, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel
Installer We Icome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click New to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe oid and criminal penalities, and will be proceeded to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storagly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Caccel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it. may result in severe oil and original penalises, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer InstalleR Install

7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. License Agreement Click Next. Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoan I lanuas Ages • Laccept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement Installer Next > Cancel < Back 8. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server Click Next to continue. - Configuration Options C Configure the Physical node ○ Configure a ⊻irtual server < Back Cancel 9. Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. nstalle Click Next to continue. Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2003ClusterVMS -<<u>B</u>ack <u>N</u>ext> <u>C</u>ancel 10. Expand Client Modules | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database iDataAgent. Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform reasons why it may be disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recommended)



Installer Install Agents for Restore Only

11. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

Installation Folder: 0 MB/ 0 MB

< Back

Temporary on C: drive: 0 MB/ 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

^

12. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

13. Click Next.

14. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

15.	Click	Next
15.	Click	Next

NOTES

• It is recommended to select the Download latest update pack(s) option to automatically install the available updates during installation.

irewall Configur	
Configure firewall served	vices
If there is a firewall b	etween this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.
Configure firewal	I services
	Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open
connection from he	ere to a CommServe's tunnel port, whether all connections toward ocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this er there is a Proxy in between.
machine, or wheth	er there is a Proxy in between.
This machine ca	in open connection to CommServe on tunnel port
C CommServe can	open connection toward this machine
C CommServe is re	eachable only through a proxy
Installer	
	Next > Cancel
staller	2
CommServe Nam	
name	rve computer name and host
CommServe	e Client Name
,	11-111-c-
(Enter a va	e Host Name lid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:
mycompute	r.mycompany.com)
mycomput	er. mycompany. com
Installer	
matanor	
	(Back Next) Cancel
	< Back Next > Cancel
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
nstaller	
Communication I	nterface Name
Communication I	
Communication I	nterface Name
Communication I	nterface Name
Communication I	nterface Name he communication paths.
Communication I	nterface Name he communication paths. Select a client name
Communication I	Ne communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to
Communication I	nterface Name he communication paths. Select a client name
Communication I	Select a client name set of a client name set of a nitreface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
Communication I	Perface Name The communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.inycompany.com
Communication I	Select a client name set of a client name set of a nitreface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
Communication I	Perface Name The communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.inycompany.com
Communication I	Perface Name The communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.inycompany.com
Communication I	Perface Name The communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.inycompany.com
Communication I Setup will configure t	Perface Name The communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.inycompany.com
Communication I Setup will configure t	Net or munication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Communication I Setup will configure t	Net or munication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Communication I Setup will configure t	Net or munication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Communication I Setup will configure to Setup will configure to Installer	te communication paths. Select a client name distance Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next> Cancel
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Staller Windows Firewal	te communication paths. Select a client name distance Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next> Cancel
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer statler Statler Windows Firewal	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name setter select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer staller Staller Mindows Firewal	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Staller Windows Firewal	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Staller Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal	Iterface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud:mycompany.com IP Address(ee) for the selected host. IExclusion List mmunicate through Windows If is ON
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Staller Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer staller Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communication paths. Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer staller Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal	It Erclusion List mercete through Windows It is DN
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I wou open on us	terrfrace Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I Windows Firewa	terrfrace Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I Windows Firewa	terrfrace Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I Windows Firewa	terface Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communication paths. Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I Windows Firewa	terrfrace Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Communication I Setup will configure to Installer Installer Mindows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I Windows Firewa	terrfrace Name he communication paths. Select a client name Communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. (Back Next > Cancel I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows lis DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List

16.

17.

18.

	Installer
	Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
	Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take son depending on download speed.
	Installer CBack Next>
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: \$28 MB Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1570 MB
	Installer < BackNext >
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have a secciations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Installer Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Chocke when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected Client_group Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates Time: DB31:12 PM
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Conce Con

19. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

e tim

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

		Installer
		Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned 💌
		,
		Installer < Back Cancel
	If you do not have Charges Deliny greated, this message will be displayed	Instatlor 🛛
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	Click OK .	Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	
		Installer
		rinkaser < Back Next > Cancel
20.	Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the	Installer
	following options, then click Next .	Exchange Backup Options
	• Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.	Please select a default backup type
	 Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged. 	C Differential Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service arroc the last Full backup, Deer not purge the transaction logs.
		Incremental Backs up changes in the Information
		Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The
		committed transaction logs are then purged.
		Installer
21.	Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.	Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information
	• The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.	
	 The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can 	
	modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the	Account Name:
	Exchange Server resides in.	
		Account Password:
		Domain:
		JEXCH
		Next>
22.		
	Click Next	lastellas
22.	Click Next.	Installer 🛛 🗙
~~.	Click Next.	Installer Summary Summary of install selections
22.	Click Next .	Summary
22.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
22.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = microampler mecompany.com
~~.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = reycomputer mycompany, com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Center = audi.
22.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mpcomputer mpcompary.com Interface Name = add.mpcompary.com
22.	Click Next.	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany, com Interface Name = audi.mycompany, com Client = audi. Job Result Path = C:\Program Files\UbPresults Global Filers = Use Cell level policy
22.	Click Next.	Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ Contriberve Host = invcomputer invcompany.com Infortace Name = audit.morphage.com Usb Result Path = C:\Program Files\UsbResults Destination Path = C:\Program Files\UsbResults

23. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.
- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click Stop to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Image: Selected Nodes		
Installer Dister Node Selection Select dutier nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Vincluster Image: Select dutier	Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?	
Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Select cluster Select cluster <th>Yes No</th> <th></th>	Yes No	
Select duster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Configured Configured Configured Configured Configured Configured	nstaller	
Petered Nodes machateles machateles State State	Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure	
Statistical > <td< td=""><td></td><td></td></td<>		
Installer Ormain Administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name (<domainuser>): [</domainuser>	VmcLuste2	
Domain administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name {DOMAINUUSER>} [Next > Cancel	
Domain administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name {DOMAINUUSER>} [
Please provide domain administrator account	nstaller Domain administrator account information	
User Name [<ddmain\user>]: LAB\Vachimistrator Account Password: <</ddmain\user>		
User Name [<ddmain\user>]: LAB\Vachimistrator Account Password: <</ddmain\user>		
LABVAdministrator Account Password < gack		
Account Password: (Back New) Cancel Installer Cancel Cancel Staller Cancel Canc		
staller Cancel Client Name Client Status Installed Clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description read2 Installed successfully. 0 Left to install: 1 Ingregress: 0 Max 1 Image: Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description read2 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Client Status Start Time End Time Nax 1 Image: Client Status Start Time Start Time Image: Client Status Start Time Image: Client Status	LABVAdministrator	
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer	Account Password:	
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer		
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer		
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel	1
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		
progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 1 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec 1 <td>nstaller</td> <td></td>	nstaller	
real2 Installed successfully: Installed successfully: Installed to install: Inprogress: Max 1 == Installer Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of smultaneous remote machines to run Setup: Installer Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 == minutes		
real2 Installed successfully: Installed successfully: Installed to install: Inprogress: Max 1 == Installer Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of smultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: Installer Instal		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Failed to install 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		ľ
Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ minutes		
Installer Advanced Settings stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 + machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 + minutes		
Advanced Settings Stop stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 + machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 + minutes	I	1
Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 📩 minutes		
Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🛓 minutes	Advanced Settings Stop	Annual
Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🛓 minutes	Installer	
Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine:		
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 🚊 machines	
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🚽 minutes	

Please verify that Orcular Logging is disabled before perfor backup operations.

ОК

ng any database

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were

installed successfully.

Click Next.

staller	×
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were s	elected to be installed:
+ CommCell	
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
न	▼ ▶
	Einish
staller	X
chedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Joh Schedu	le for each iDataAgent that has been installed on
this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow th	he iDataAgents to perform automated backup
and restore operations.	and a second second
lah Cahadula anatian ang ka arawa	plished through the CommCell Console
administration interface.	pisited a rough are connices console
Installer	
	[Next>]
	_
taller	× * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
ompletion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully	<i>.</i>
/isit the website below to download latest U	Ipdates and Service Packs.
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
and the second second	
	<u>*</u>
	_
Installer Technical Support Website	Existe

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 19, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

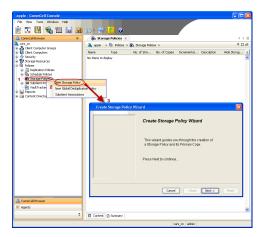
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click
 - Properties.Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).
 Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox

iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS

The Windows File System iDataAgent must be first installed onto all of the physical nodes of the cluster. See Install the Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent if you have not installed it on all of the physical nodes.

Once it has been installed onto the physical nodes, the Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent, Exchange Public Folder *i*DataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver) and Windows File System *i*DataAgent can be installed from the active node to the virtual server using the following steps described below to install Exchange Agents.

The software can also be automatically installed on all available passive nodes when the software is installed onto the virtual server, or you can choose to install any passive node(s) separately.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Before installing the Exchange Agents, create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

1. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click **New -> Key**.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

2. Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

- To create the registry key, see the following steps:
- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 Administrator of the local computer

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- Run **Setup.exe** from Software Installation Package. 2.
- 3. Select the required language. Click Next.

- 4. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software. NOTES
 - This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

5. Click Next.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

Explain [United States] Enditive
Software install options 32-bit Software install options 32-bit Software install options Exit Installer Velocene This program will install Software on your computer. It is storage recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to qui Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Setup program. Use Installer WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and cirimal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Setup on the se
Software install options 32-bit Software install options 32-bit Software install options Exit Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storgly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to quid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Setup program. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unsubforcied reproduction or distribution of this program, or any potion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Cancel It is storgly recommended that any and all virus scorning software be disabled framediably before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do a new years in the factoring by the virus scorner and subcocent fultient in complex installer on them the software installation. Failure to do a new years in the factoring by the virus scorner and autoregram.
State of the server of the se
State of the server of the se
State of the server of the se
Installer Image: Control of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storagly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Carcel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running Click New York Setup. WARINING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civit and criminal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel
Installer Image: Control of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running Click New to continue with Setup. WARINING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Next > Cancel Installer Cancel Cancel Installer Cancel Cancel
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storgly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civit and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running Click Next to continue with Setup. WARINING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Cancel
It is storagly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unsufficient of the production or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer Installer It is storagly recommended that any and all virus scorning software be disabled fuel toolking by the virus scorner and subrequent future for solup to instal it con tiles. Click DK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
Setup program.
Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unsufficient expression of distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in serve crivit and criminal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer Installer It is storagiv recommended that any and all vices scarning software be disabled minered are before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do so may result in file-locking by the vicus scarner and subsequent failure for setup to install its own lifes. Click OK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer Installer It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled for mediately before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do so may result in file-locking by the virus scanner and subsequent Adult for result is on titles. Click DK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Cick OK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled immediately before contrauing with this Software installation. Failure to do a may rend in file locking by the virus scanner and subsequent failure for sofup to initial is own files. Click DK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled immediately before contrauing with this Software installation. Failure to do a may rend in file locking by the virus scanner and subsequent failure for sofup to initial is own files. Click DK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
Click OK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
OK
Installer License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Software Release 9.0.0
(including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Euclid Theorem A stresswere
C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
Installer < Back Next > Cancel

Select Create a new instance option to install the Exchange Agents on separate 8. instance.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.

9. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next to continue.

10. Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. Click Next to continue.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Exchange, and 11. select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

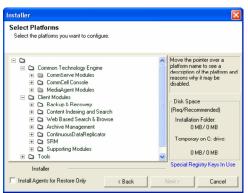
Note that the Exchange Database iDataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database iDataAgent for step-by-step procedure.

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** 12. firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

Installer	
Install Instan	ce Selection
Please specify install.	the instance you want to use during
	Instance Selection
	 Create a new instance (Not recommended)
	Install to existing instance
	Select an installed instance.
	Client Name
	Client Host Name
	CommServe Name
Installe	f
	<pre></pre>
Installer	×
Cluster Type	
Configure the	Physical Node or a Virtual Server
- Con	figuration Options
	Configure the Physical node
0	Configure a ⊻irtual server
-	
	< Back Next> Cancel
Installer	\mathbf{X}
Virtual Serv	er Selection
	tual server you would like to configure
	Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
	2003Cluster//MS
	< Back Next> Cancel
Installer	
Installer Select Dietfe	
Select Platfo	rms
Select Platfo	
Select Platfo Select the plat	rms forms you want to configure.
Select Platfo Select the plat	rms coms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a plafform name to see a
Select Platfo Select the plat	rms forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine Commiserve Modules Move the pointer over a plafform name to see a description of the platform and reasons why it may be
Select Platfo Select the plat	rms forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine Commiser Modules Commiser Modules
Select Platfo Select the platform	rms forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine Commised coase a platform momento case a platform momento cas
Select Platfo Select the plat	Irms irms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommSell Console Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reactors why it may be disabled Modules Backup & Recovery Dink Space
Select Platfo Select the plat	Irms irms irms commset configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reacting the reacting with y may be disabled. It Modules Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browne
Select Platfo Select the platfor Corr Co	Irms ioms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the public mark desated models Commic II Consel Medadagent Modules Diak Space Diak Space (Reg/Recommended)



13.	Enter the fully	qualified	domain	name	of the	CommServe	Host N	ame

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

14. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

15. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Encre vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer mycompary.com)
CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Encre vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer mycompary.com)
Next > Cancel Installer Image: CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Image: CommServe Client Name Entrier avail, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer mycompary.com
Next > Cancel Installer Image: CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Computer name and host name CommServe Client Name CommServe Client Name Image: CommServe Client Name Entrier avail, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer mycompary.com
Installer CommServe Name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name Enter valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycompute: mycompary.com)
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompary.com)
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompary.com)
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe Computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompary.com)
Specify the CommServe computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompary.com)
name CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name (Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com)
CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com)
CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com)
mycomputer.mycompany.com)
mycomputer.mycompany.com)
mycomputer.mycompany.com
Installer
<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer
Communication Interface Name
Setup will configure the communication paths.
Select a client name
audi_cn
Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
audi.my.com
audi.my.com
audi.my.com
audi.my.com
audi.mycompany.com
audi.mycompany.com
audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer <back next=""> Cancel</back>
audi.mycompany.com
ead.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer < Installer Cancel Installer Windows Firewall Exclusion List
ead.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer < Installer Cancel Installer Windows Firewall Exclusion List
audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer < Back
audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer (Back Next> Cancel Installer Mindows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
ead.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer < Installer Cancel Installer Windows Firewall Exclusion List
aud.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Keack Next > Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Allow program to communicate through Windows Firewall is DN
audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer (Back Next> Cancel Installer Mindows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
aud.nycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Windows Firewall is DN Vindows Firewall is DN Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
aud.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Keack Next > Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Allow program to communicate through Windows Firewall is DN
aud.nycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Windows Firewall is DN Vindows Firewall is DN Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
aud.nycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Windows Firewall is DN Vindows Firewall is DN Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
aud.nycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Windows Firewall is DN Vindows Firewall is DN Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
aud.nycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Installer Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Installer Cancel Installer Vindows Firewall Exclusion List Windows Firewall is DN Vindows Firewall is DN Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

16. Click Next.

17.

18.

19.

		Installer	
			tall Latest Update Packs he latest service pack and post provider website.
			id latest update pack(s) internet connectivity at this time. This process may take som ad speed.
Verify th	e default location for software installation.	Installer Installer	< Back Next >
Click Br	owse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination	r folder to install the program files.
Click Ne	xt.		
	 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /:*?"<>> # It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only. 	Click Next to accept Destination Folder C. VProgram Files/ Drive List C: 928 MB Installer	the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate Browse Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB < Back Next >
Select a	Client Group from the list.	Installer	
		mstatter	
Click Ne	xt.	Client Group Sele	
Click Ne	xt . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selec Select a client group for which Schee	
Click Ne	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selec Select a client group for which Schee	In the client. There for the same associations at various levels like but Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected
Click Ne	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selec Select a client group fo Which Schec	In the client.
Click Ne	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Select Select a client group for which Scheo Installer Installer Schedule Install o	In the client.
Click Ne	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Select Select a client group for which Scheo Installer	In the client. Inter Group is a logical grouping of client machines have the same associations at various levels like have the same associations at various levels like have the same association at various levels. Client group: C

20. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

in.

To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Yes}}$.

24.

		Installer
		Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned 🔽
		Installer Cancel
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer
		Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	Click OK .	Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	
		Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel
21.	Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down	Installer
	list. Click Next .	Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange server name
	This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange	
	Agents on Non-Exchange Server.	Exchange Server Exchange Server Name: Exchange_Server Exchange Server Version Exchange 2007
		Installer <u>Cancel</u>
22.	Click Next.	Installer
		Summary Summary of install selections
		Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
		Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com
		Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi
		Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\JobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy
		Installer
		installer < Back Next > Cancel
23.	Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next .	Installer
	• Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server	Exchange Administrator Account
	administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.	Information Mailbox and Profile information
	 Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. 	Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with
	Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above.	rease enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied.
	 Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. 	Account Name: Profile Name:
	 Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. 	Account Password: Exchange Server Name:
	For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.	Mailbox Name for this Account: Domain:
	• Domain - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides	installer < Back Cancel

×

×

To complete the install fo	r this node only, click No.
----------------------------	-----------------------------

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

Ye	s No	
Installer Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure		×
Prefered Nodes VmcLuter2	Selected Nodes	Configured Nodes

Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?

2

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27.	The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be
	interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

nstr	. 11.			
nsr		4 P -		

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admir

LAB \Administrator

Domain Account Information

mstatter					
You can stop remote ins progress will continue ins					
Client Name Clie	nt Status	Start Time	End Time	Result Description	1
real2					
				<u>.</u>	l.
Installed successfully: Failed to install:	0		oinstall:	1 0 Max 1	
Elapsed time: 0 sec	,		stimated time l	eft 10 min 0 sec	
Elapsed time: U sec		t	stimated time i	erc iuminusec	_
Installer					
Advanced Settings]			Stop	
nstaller					
	taneous remote m Setup to start on		· · ·	+ machines	
Time to wait for Setu	p to complete on	each remote m	achine: 15	÷ minutes	
		K			

< <u>B</u>ack

Cancel

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.

Installer	X
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were selected to be installed:	A
+ CommCell	-
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
ا	▼ ▶
	Einish
	<u></u> /
staller	
Schedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that ha this client computer.	as been installed on
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform aut and restore operations.	omated backup
and results operations.	
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell	Console
administration interface.	
Installer	
11 Bi carror	<u>N</u> ext>
	L. Hony
istaller	X
Completion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully.	A
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
Lick Finish to complete Setup.	
	*
Installer	
Technical Support Website	Einish

3

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 20, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

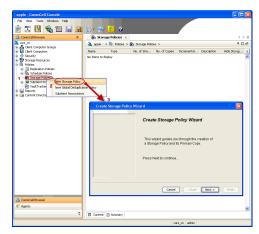
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

< Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server

< Previous Next >

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the 32-bit Exchange Agents on 32-bit Non-Exchange Server computer.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel
₽ View documentation website	
 View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader 	
	🖨 Exit

- 4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this computer. NOTES:
 - Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. 6. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance for the purpose of different Exchange Servers.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 7. To install the **Exchange** *i***DataAgents** expand **Client Modules | Exchange**, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

8. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

Installer				X
License Agreement	normal Draw			
Please read the following License Ag the PAGE DOWN key to view the er	preement. Press ntire agreement.			
· · · ·				
				^
F 117 T.				. –
End User License a	and Limited War	ranty .	Agreemen	it
Softw	vare Release 9.0.0			
(including Microsoft® SQL)	Server™ 2008 Entern	rise Edit	ion SOL Set	WerTM
2008 Express Edition an	d Windows Pre-Insta	dation l	Environment)
Ewa II		~~*		~
 I accept the terms in the licens 	e agreement.			
I do not accept the terms in the	e license agreement.			
Installer				
	< Back	N	ext >	Cancel
Installer				
Install Instance Selection				
Please specify the instance you wan install.	t to use during			
- Instance Selection				
	w instance (Not recomm	iended)		
 Install to exist 				
Select ar	n installed instance.	_		-
				-
Client Na	·			
Client Ho	st Name			
CommSe	rve Name			
Installer				
	< Back	N	ext >	Cancel
Installer				×
Select Platforms				×
	figure.			×
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con	figure.			X
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con		^	Move the po	ne to see a
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng H Commor Vectorology Eng		•	platform nam description o reasons why	ne to see a of the platform and
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con		•	platform nam	ne to see a of the platform and
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console		<	platform nam description o reasons why	ne to see a of the platform and it may be
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Contert Indexing and	ine Search		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. — Disk Space (Req/Record	ne to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended)
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Content Modules Content Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and	ine Search		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Reg/Recor Installation	e to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) n Folder:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con- Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console Medadgent Modules Conter Mo	ine Search Browse	10 ()	platform nam description o reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M	e to see a if the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 1B/0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommServe Modules CommCell Console Cont Modules Cent Modules Cent Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and	ine Search Browse		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary	e to see a if the platform and it may be mmended) n Folder: (B / 0 MB v on C: drive:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Common Technology Eng CommServe Modules CommCell Console Content Modules Content Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Con	ine Search Browse		platform nam description co reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	ie to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 18 / 0 MB y on C: drive: 18 / 0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con- Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Supporting Modules	ine Search Browse		platform nam description co reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	e to see a if the platform and it may be mmended) n Folder: (B / 0 MB v on C: drive:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con- Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console CommCell Con	ine Search Browse		platform nam description co reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	ie to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 18 / 0 MB y on C: drive: 18 / 0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Co	ine Search Browse Johor		platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e ho see a it may be e mmended) h Folder: H2 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Co	ine Search Browse Johor		platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e ho see a it may be e mmended) h Folder: H2 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Content Modules C	ine Search Browse Johor		platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e ho see a it may be e mmended) h Folder: H2 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console C	ine Search Browse Johor		platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e ho see a it may be e mmended) h Folder: H2 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select He platforms you want to con Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Common Technology Eng Common Console Common Console Common Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing Asecore Content Indexing Asecore Installer Installer Firewall Configuration	ine Search Browse Johor		platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e ho see a it may be e mmended) h Folder: H2 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Content	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. – Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a when platform and it may be mmended) 1 Folder: 187 0 MB v on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Stable Second Stable Second Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. – Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a when platform and it may be mmended) 1 Folder: 187 0 MB v on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Stable Second Stable Second Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. – Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a when platform and it may be mmended) 1 Folder: 187 0 MB v on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Content Inde	ine Search Browse cator < Back	ve, conf	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk. Space (Req/Recor Installation O M Special Reg Next >	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select He platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Content Indexing and Content Index Indexing and Content Index Index Index Index Index Content Index Index Index Index Index Index Content Index In	ine Search Browse cator CommSet Search Searc	ve, conf	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk. Space (Req/Recor Installation O M Special Reg Next >	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommSel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Content Indexing and Configuration Configure firewall services Configure f	ine Search Browse aator Chine and the CommSet Search Search Chine and the CommSet Search Sear	ve, conf affic. Wh rer all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommSele Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Modules Continuoud DataRept Continuoud DataRept Continuoud DataRept Continue Second Se	ine Search Browse sator < Back	ve, conf affic. Wh rer all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Commiserve Modules Commiserve Modules Commiserve Modules Content Indesing and Veb Backup & Recovery Content Indesing and Content Index	ine Search Browse Search Searc	ve, conf affic. Wh rer all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Common Technology Eng Comment Console Comment Console Comment Console Comment Console Content Modules Continuous DataRphe Continuous DataRphe Continue Content Modules Continues Content Configuration Configure Iterwal services Please specify how Windows First- Continues are blocked, and set Modelshee are pro- Content Intent er a Common Content Content er a Pho Commence are proceed, and set Content Please are content. Configure Iterwal services Content Intent er a Common Content Content are are proceed. Content Content are are proceed. Content Content Content are are proceed. Content Cont	ine Search Browse Search Searc	ve, conf affic. Wh rer all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Commiserve Modules Commiserve Modules Commiserve Modules Content Indesing and Veb Backup & Recovery Content Indesing and Content Index	ine Search Browse Search Searc	ve, conf affic. Wh rer all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng Common Technology	ine Search Browse Search Searc	ve, conf affic. Wh let all co Comm5 unnel po	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg lext > igure firewall s ether it is poss meetions too erve to corner	e to see a di the platform and it may be mmended) it may be mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB o on C: drive: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel

9. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

		CommServe Host Name [Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, JP host name; for (mycomputer.mycompany.com) mycomputer.mycompany.com
		Installer < Back
10.	Click Next.	Installer
	If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client	Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	name entered in the Select a client name field in the previous instance.	Select a client name <mark>audicn</mark>
		Select an interface name that th communicate with the CommSer
		audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected f
		Installer < Back
11.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell	Installer
	programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List. Click Next .	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is DN
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recomme exclusion list.
		Installer < Back
12.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
	Click Browse to change the default location. Click Next .	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /: * ? " < > # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Brow Destination Folder

CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name

CommServe Client Name

xample

Next>

-

•

nded to add the software programs to the

Next >

e to choose an alternate location

Space Required / Recommended

1394 MB / 1670 MB

Next >

Drive List

C: 928 MB

Installer

-

< Back

Browse.

Next >

l iel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

s computer will use to

Cancel

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

13. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

14. Click Next.

15. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21.

16. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

Client Group Selection Select a client group for the clie	
Select a client group for the clie	
	2F IL.
The Class Gra	up is a logical grouping of client machines
which have th Schedule Polic	es ame associations at various levels like cy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
School and Fork	y, normy control, occurry and reports.
Client -	
Client gr	
None Se client_gr	oup
Installer	
The second	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
staller	
Schedule Install of Autor	matic Updates
Choose when you want to sch downloaded updates.	edule an install of the
🔽 Schedule Install of Auto	matic Lindates
C Once	Time: 08:31:12 PM
Weekly	Monday Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
Installer	< Back Next> Cancel
nstallar	
nstaller Storage Policy Selectio	n
Select a storage policy for the backed up.	deradit subciterix to be
Configure for Laptop or	Desktop Backup
Select a storage policy	from the pull-down list.
Unass	igned 🔽
Installer	/ Back Not Crust
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	
nstation Starage Policy Selection	
nstaller	n default subclient to be
nstallor Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be
nstallor Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be
ne initiar Storage Policy Selectio Sector a storage colicy for the Sector a storage colicy for the Sector and Sector Sect	n default subclient to be
nstallor Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be
Installer	n Cesktop Backup (Desktop Backup (Back Next > Cancel
Netation Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the Each of J. Configure for Laptop of Installer	n default subclierd to be 2 Desktop Bachup
Netation Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the Each of J. Configure for Laptop of Installer	default subsilient to be a Besktup Backup Cancel Cancel
Ant for hore Startage Policy Softwelle Balanda a storage policy for the Balanda for storage policy for the Contigues for Laptop of Installer Installer Stoller Stoller	default subsilient to be a Besktup Backup Cancel Cancel
Ant for hore Startage Policy Softwelle Balanda a storage policy for the Balanda for storage policy for the Contigues for Laptop of Installer Installer Stoller Stoller	default subsilient to be a Besktup Backup Cancel Cancel
Station Second points	n default subsfiers to be * Desktop Backup < Back News> Cancel er name
Statement State S	n default subsfiers to be * Desktop Backup < Back News> Cancel er name
Statement Second a science policy Second a science policy for the Configure for Lapton o Installer Staller Please provide Exchange serv Exchange Exchange Exchange Exchange Exchange Exchange Exchange	e Server
Statutor Statutor Statutor Statutor Convitation Convited Convited Convited Convited Convited Conv	default subjetient to be Desktop Backup Cancel e Dack E Server change Server Name:
Statester Sector and the Policy Sec	e Server change Server Name: change Server
Statester Sector and the Policy Sec	default subjetiend to be Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel F e Server change Server Name: change Server Version
Statester Sector and the Policy Sec	default subjetiend to be Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel F e Server change Server Name: change Server Version
Textuality Textuality Textuality Textuality Exchange Exchang	default subjetiend to be Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel F e Server change Server Name: change Server Version
Transfer of the second	default subjetiend to be Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel F e Server change Server Name: change Server Version

17. Click Next.

- **18.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.

Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Seturi has enough information to start or	opying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next to begin copyi	ng files.
	<u>^</u>
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\	
CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com	pany.com
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\Jo	bResults
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	
Installer	>
in standi	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	×
Exchange Administrator Account Information	
Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Exchange account informa the information supplied.	tion required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
, Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Malibox Name for this Account.	Domain.
,	,
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
_	
Installer	X
Installer Schedule Reminder	×
	×
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note:	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note:	e for each DataAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer.	e for each DataAgent that has been installed on e DataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Scheduli this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Scheduli this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Scheduli this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp	e DataAgents to perform automated backup Nished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e DataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e DataAgents to perform automated backup Nished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer: Job Schedules are required to allow th and retroice operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e DataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e DataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer: Job Schedules are required to allow th and retroice operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	e DataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedules creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit he website below to download latest U	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit he website below to download latest U	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit he website below to download latest U	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit he website below to download latest U	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit he website below to download latest U	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule are required to allow th and retrore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit the website below to download latest U Click Finish to complete Setup.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th and restore operations. Job Schedules creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Software installation completed successfully Visit the website below to download latest U Dick Finish to complete Setup. Installer Installer Installer	e DataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedul this client computer. Job Schedule are required to allow th and retrore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully Visit the website below to download latest U Click Finish to complete Setup.	e iDataAgents to perform automated backup blished through the CommCell Console

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 15, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

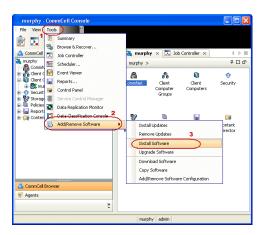
- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 22. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

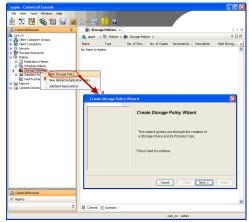
- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

Installer
instali Wizard
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.
Click Next to continue.
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select the computer's operating system
(Windows
O Unix and Linux
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Installer X
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software (•) Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Structure will be notabled only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Image: Select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Red: Street As Script Parcel Street As Script Parcel
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Antonatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegact C
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Automatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. (gack
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Antonatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegact C
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Astematically select computers Atomatically decover on the selected lat of computers Atomatically decover of when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Cancel Ender Ender Ender Ender Ender Ender
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Manualy select computers Software will be notabled only on the selected list of computers. Automatically decover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Cancel Employ Manualy Select C
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

Tourse	nument Client on Client Group Software Cache cettings, dirk Next, To quentide Software Cache cettings check
	current Clent or Clent Group Software Cache settings, clek Next. To override Software Cache settings check. le Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
	Override Software Cache (Divere Cache) (Divere Cach
	<book next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</book>
Install	r 🛛
	r Account Information
mult	specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing iple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
	Reuse Active Directory credentials
	User Name:
	Example:domain\username
	Password:
1	
< <u>B</u> ac	k Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
< 500	k Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Installer	Exage(s) to install
Installer	
Installer Select Pa	Stage(y) to install Stages of Dashgort Stages
Installer	
Installer Select Pa	
Installer Select Pa # 6	
Installer Select Pa # 6	
Installer Select Pa \Rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow 0	
Installer Solect Pa	
Installer Solect Pa	
Installer Solect Pa	
Installer Select Pa	
Installer Select Pa	Charged to Install De for costs De for c
Installer Select Pa	
Installer	Charged to Install De for costs De for c
Installer Seciel P Se	Commencies Settings for the selected Software
Installer Seciel P Se	Charge (Jo Install So from Control
Installer Seciel P Se	Charge (d) to Install Image: Charge (d)
Installer Sector P Record Record Sector P R	
Installer Solici P P C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Commenced Statings for the sciencial Software Commenced Statings for the scincine Software Commenced Statin
Installer Solici P P C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Charge() to Instail Image: Charge (Charge Charge
Installer Solici P P C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Charged to Install So from Contain So from So f
Installer Solici P P C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Charged to Install So from Contain So from So f
Installer Solici P P C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Charged to Install So from Containt So from Containt Containt So from Containt So from Containt So from Containt So from Containt Containt So from Containt So fro

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

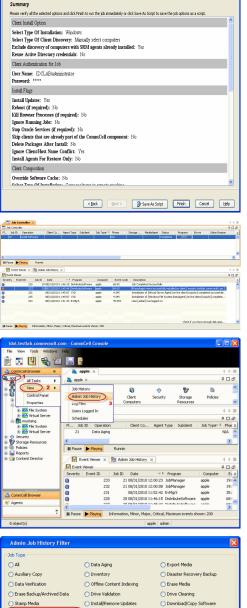
13. Click Finish.

Agent Specific Settings	
Components	
	erver Information (Optional)
Server Name	
	rolle (Optional) IDCLAB jedministrator Configure Password
Mailbox Name	Comparentssour
Profile Name	
	atabase (Optional)
User Account	
O Differential	Backup
 Incrementa 	Badup
	< gadk Bext > Save As Script Finish Cancel
installer	
Enter Additional Insta	II Options
😑 Installer Flags	
 Installer Hags Install Updates 	
Reboot (if requir	ed
Kill Browser Proc	
Ignore Running :	
Stop Oracle Serv	ices (F required)
Skip clients that	are already part of the CommCell component
Advanced Option	8
Delete Packages	After Install
Ignore Client/Ho	
Install Result Log Loc	
Install Agents Fo	r Restore Only
Optional Settings	
 Job Result Path 	Directory
CVD Part	840
Evingrc Port	840
Install Directory	
Log File Location	
CommServe Host	Name
	< (gook (Bent >) Save As Script Pinish Cancel
Installer	
Ricara Salaat	When To Run The Job
Fiedse Select	when to Run the Job
Job Initiation	
(Imm	ediate
	his job now
Kun ti	nis job now
🔿 Sche	dule
	gure Schedule Pattern Configure
	server movement a server (1)

- **14.** You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- **17.** You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job



 Install/Upgrade/Remove Software
 Disk Library Maintenance O SRM Reports/Actions O CommCell Export O CommCell Import 1 O Recover Store Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Start Time End Tir ÷ Job Stab • All O Completed O Failed ◯ Killed Number of Jobs View All Jobs O Desired Number of Jobs 2 OK Cancel Help

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software directly on the Exchange Server you wish to protect

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive. System Requirements

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
Next >	Cancel
≓ Install Software on this computer	
<i>≡</i> Advanced options	
View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	🖨 Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery 6. | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

Please specify how Windows Firewall connection from here to a CommServe CommServe are blocked, and setup s machine, or whether there is a Proxy in			oward
C This machine can open connection	to CommServe on t	unnel port	
C CommServe can open connection t	oward this machine		
C CommServe is reachable only throu	gh a proxy		
Installer		Next >	Cancel
nstaller			
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name name	and host		
CommServe Client Name			
CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IF mycomputer.mycompany.com)		mple:	
mycomputer.mycompany.com			
Installer			
In Islandi	< Back	Next>	Cancel

License Agreement

Installer

nstaller

- 6

Select Platforms

Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.

· I accept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement

Select the platforms you want to configure

 □
 □
 Common Technology Engine

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 Control Adgert Modules

 □
 □
 Clenk Modules

 □
 □
 Control Indexing and Search

 □
 □
 Content Indexing and Search

Installer Install Agents for Restore Only

Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

nstaller

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoav I lanuas Agus

> < Back

< Back

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Next >

Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform reasons why it may be disabled.

Disk Space (Reg/Recommended)

Installation Folder:

0 MB/ 0 MB

0 MB/ 0 MB

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

X

Temporary on C: drive:

^

Cancel

9. Click Next.

		Installer
		Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
		Select a client name Budiven
		Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
		audi.mycompany.com
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
10.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Installer (
	Click Next.	Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is ON
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
11.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer Destination Folder
	Click Browse to change the default location.	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Click Next. Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /:*?"<> # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Destination Folder
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List Drive List Spece Required / Recommended C: 928 MB 1394 MB / 1670 MB
		Installer KBack Next> Cancel
12.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
		Client group: None Salected client_group
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
13.	Click Next.	

X

X

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

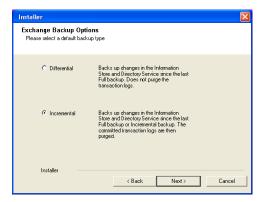
If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click \mathbf{OK} .

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 25.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 15. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - **Differential** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.



Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.

Schedule Install of Automatic Updates

Time:

Monday

C Friday

C Sunday

< Back

< Back

C Wednesday

08:31:12 PM

÷

C Tuesday

C Thursday

C Saturday

Next>

•

Next>

Next >

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

C Once

Weekly

Installer

Storage Policy Selection

Installer

Confi

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.

re for Laptop or Desktop Backup

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

Installer					×
Exchange Server I Please provide Exchar					
	Exchange Server Exchange Sr Exchange_S Exchange Se Exchange Se	erver erver Version	<u> </u>		
Installer		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	<u></u> an	cel

20. Click Next.

Enter Administrator account info	ormation	
Account	Name:	
Account	Password:	
Domain: EXCH		
	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel
Installer		×
Summary Summary of install selections		
Setup has enough informati install settings, click Next to	on to start copying the program files. If you a begin copying files.	re satisfied with the
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Dient = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com :ompany.com ram Files\JobResults	~
Installer		<u>></u>
	< Back Next >	Cancel
Installer		
Please verify that Gr backup operations.	cular Logging is disabled before performing a	ny database
	ОК	

Enter Administrator account information

X

Installer							×
Summar Summary	y of install selections						
	o has enough informatio I settings, click Next to			e program files. I	f you are sat	isfied with t	he
Comn Interf Client Job F Globa	nation Path = C:\Progr Serve Host = miccom ace Name = audi.micc = audi esults Path = C:\Progr Il Filters = Use Cell leve	outer.mycomp ompany.com ram Files\Jobl		1		2	
h	nstaller						
			< Bac		ext >	Can	cel
Exchang Informat Mailbox a	and Profile information						X
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please e	ion		ion requ	ired below. A ne	sw profile will	be created	I with
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please e	ton and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied.			ired below. A ne Yrofile Name:	ew profile will	be created	X
Informat Mailbox a Please e the inform Account	ion and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied. Name:		F	Profile Name:	·	be created	X with
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please ei the inform Account	ton and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied.		F		·	be created	V with
Exchang Informat Mailbox & Please e the inform Account	ion and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied. Name:		F 	Profile Name:	·	be created	e with

- 21. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Next.

Installer 🛛 🔀
Summary Summary of install selections
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Dient = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Giobal Filters = Use Cell level policy
< Back Next > Cancel
Installer 🛛
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer.
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
Installer

Software i	stallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Pa	acks.
Click Finis	n to complete Setup.	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 25. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

26. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

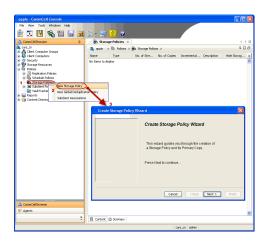
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

 From the CommCell Browser, select Tools, point to Add/Remove Software, and then click Install Software.



2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

Image: Second Proof Image: Second Proof Proof Image: Second Proof Image: Seco	murphy × ↓ b ab controler × 4 b a murphy > 4 □ ab b b 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
boxes Rescore boxe	murphy × 5 Job Controller × 4 ▷ E murphy > 4 ⊂ 3
Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Select the computer's operating system Concil a forware in the steps required to install software on computers. Cick Next to continue. Select the computer's operating system Concil a forware in the steps for installing the software Nexteller Select the computer's operating system Concil a forware in the software in the software in the software (Difference Software installing the software (Differ	murphy × bo Controler ×
Image: Solution of the second provide and the second provide pro	and a client Client Security
Compares Compare	tommNet Client Client Security
Computer Compute	Client Client Security Computer Computers
Groups Groups	
East lier Installer I	Groups
Description of the series required to install software on computers. Clack Next to continue. Installer Install	2
Installer	kector
Commended Browser	
Add/Renove Software Configuration Add/Renove Software Configuration Add/Renove Software Configuration Install WiZard Install WiZard Install WiZard Click Next to continue. Cli	
CommeRel Browser Agents Trustaller This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers. Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Trustaller Select the computer's operating system Windows Units and Linus Click Testal Comments Select the computer's operating system Click Next to continue. Click Testal Comments Click Next to continue. Click Next to conti	
Installer Select the computer's operating system Windows Units and lines Installer Installer Select the computer's operating system Windows Units and lines East Installer	regronere service comparatem
Installer Installer Installer Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Installer Select the computer's operating system Wrdows Unix and Linux Click Next to continue.	
Installer Installer Ceed Examples Save As Sorpe Fresh Cancel Examples Ceed Examples Save As Sorpe Fresh Cancel Examples Save As Sorpe Fres	* *
Install Wizerd This wizerd quides you through the steps required to install software on computers. Click Next to continue. <	murphy admin
Install Wizard This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers. Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Click Next to continue. Installor Select the computer's operating system Windows Units and Linux Cleck Even As Scropt Fresh Cancel Even As Scropt Fresh Cancel Even As Scropt Installor Even As Scropt Cleck Even As Scropt Protein Even As Scropt Installor Even As Scropt Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Installor Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers. Click Next to continue. Click Next	
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers. Click Next to continue. Click Next	
Installer Select the computer's operating system O Windows Utrice and Linux Lease Lease Lea	
Installer Select the computer's operating system O Windows Utrice and Linux Lease Lease Lea	
Select the computer's operating system O Wrdws O Unix and Linux Resk Bark Save As Script Prich Cancel Encitation Installing the software O Hanake select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Select the computer's operating system Wrdows Unix and Linux	
O Unic and Linux < Back Back Exect how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers for installing the software () Hanaly select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers.	
< Back	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
Manually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Manually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	e computers for installing the coffware
Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	o comparers for maxaming the software
	als on the celested let of correctory
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ed when the job runs.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

< Back Next > P Save As Script Prich Cancel Help

• Select Client Group from Available and click Add.

• Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

9.

• Select the **Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup** option to install **Backup Monitor** utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information. 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

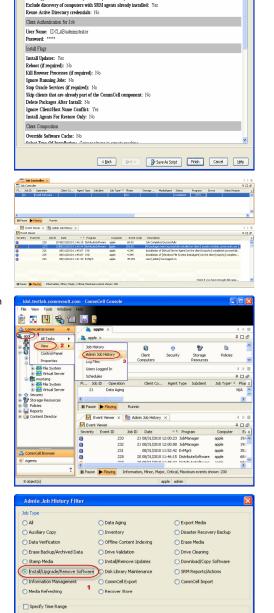
13. Click Finish.

CBxt Nett 2 Proce Au Scrott Install Options for the solected Software Proceedual Software <td< th=""><th>😑 Client Groups</th><th>Settings for the selected Software</th></td<>	😑 Client Groups	Settings for the selected Software
<pre>statistic implice implicit implici</pre>		
Add 1 Add 1 Add 1 Add 2 A	Available:	
Kdd fibrs: tip 6 di leviro Kdd fibrs: tip 6 di leviro Corfigare fie Ladore ladore interesti and		
Add all >> (add all heres: (contrary or for Lapton Backgar: Storage Packy to se: (bbc)		
Code (reace at a code of		
Skda Rhes Use Call and pay Cordyne For Laptap balages Storger Rady to use Callson Intel 2 Callson Intel 2 Callson Intel 2 Callson Intel 2 Callson		
Configure Field (backape)		
Skooge Fakry to use 	Global hiters	Use Cell level policy
Skooge Fakry to use 	Configure For Lap	top Backups
<pre>statist Enter the selected Software Arger Sparts Software to the selected Software Arger Sparts Software Software Compare Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Software Configure Funds Software Softw</pre>	Storage Policy to	use
<pre>statist Enter the selected Software Arger Sparts Software to the selected Software Arger Sparts Software Software Compare Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Software Configure Funds Software Softw</pre>		
<pre>statist Enter the selected Software Arger Sparts Software to the selected Software Arger Sparts Software Software Compare Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Configure Funds Software Software Software Configure Funds Software Softw</pre>		
<pre>statist First First Statist Departs for the solected Software Arger Spart Statist Departs for the solected Software Arger Spart Statist Department (Spland)</pre>		
<pre>statist First First Statist Departs for the solected Software Arger Spart Statist Departs for the solected Software Arger Spart Statist Department (Spland)</pre>		KBack Next> Swe As Smith Firish Cancel
Enter the install Options for the selected Software		
Exchange First Information (Episonal) Some first Configure Finance) Exchange First Information (Episonal) Some first Configure Finance) Exchange First Configure Finance) Configure F	aller	
Composents Chalameterize (defaund) Service (defaund) Service (defaund) Use Account (exclusion) Use Account (exclusion) Use Account (exclusion) Configure Nations Configure Nations Configure Nations Configure Nations Service (frequence) Servic	ter the Install Options	for the selected Software
Conserve Home and Advised Section (Figure Advised	Agent Specific Settings	
Serve New (wedde:37 Cothgen Palescell Cothgen Pal		
Contage Predix (bytend) Use Actors: Contage Predix (bytend) Use Actors: Contage Predix (bytend) Use Actors: Contage Predix (bytend) Contage Predix (bytend		
Header there In thereby bedauer (typinud) User Accust Cardyout Plannord Charles bedauer (typinud) Cardyout Plannord Cardyout Plannord Cardyout Plannord Cardyout Plannord There is a state of typinud Import Accust Cardyout Plannord Cardyout Plannord There is a state of typinud Import Accust Francisco (transmot) Import Accust Francisco (transmot) Import Accust (transmot) Import Accust (transmot) Import Accust (transm		
https://www.interference.org/ https		Configure Password
Exchange Sockasse (Optional) Use Account Configura Plannows Offenential backs Offenentia		
tore Actor: Configurations and actors and actors and actors and actors act		base (Optional)
Offerendal backge Offerendal backge Offerendal backge Enter Additional Install Options Installer Install offerende Install off		
Install Part Additional Install Options	 Incremental Bar 	dup
Install Cardinal Install Options		
Install Cardinal Install Options		
Install Cardinal Install Options		
Enter Additional Install Options		<back next=""> Save As Script Pinch Cancel</back>
Legific Leaton Constituent terrs		
Consident Hats ((bol ())) Schedule Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Inteletion Run this job now Schedule	Janore Clerk/Host N Instal Result Log Locatio Instal Agents For Re Optional Settings Dob Result Di Path CVD Part Evengre Part	nstore Only
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Inflation Immediate Run this job now O Schedule	Janore Clerk/Host N Instal Result Log Locatio Instal Agents For Re Optional Settings Job Result Di Path CVD Part Evingic Part Instal Directory	nstate Onlystate OnlystateOnlystate Only
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now O Schedule	Japore Clerk/Host N Instal Result tog Locatio Instal Agents For Re Optional Settings Path Path CVD Part Evengor Part Instal Dectory Log File Location	nstore Onlystore Onlysto
Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule	Japore Clerk/Host N Instal Result tog Locatio Instal Agents For Re Optional Settings Path Path CVD Part Evengor Part Instal Dectory Log File Location	n
Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule	Japore Clerk/Host N Instal Result tog Locatio Instal Agents For Re Optional Settings Path Path CVD Part Evengor Part Instal Dectory Log File Location	n metary M
Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now O Schedule	Pyrow Clerkhold N Instal Result Log Locato Consult Agence Ford Softenand Statistics Softenand Statistics CoD Prot Softenand Statistics CoD Prot Exings: Part Instal Directory Log File Location ControlState Host Nam	n metary M
Immediate Run this job now Schedule	Pyrow Clerkhold N Instal Result Log Locato Consult Agence Ford Softenand Statistics Softenand Statistics CoD Prot Softenand Statistics CoD Prot Exings: Part Instal Directory Log File Location ControlState Host Nam	n metary M
© Immediate Run this job now	Pyrow Clerichtent M Installerstructure Installerstructure Softenstates Softenstates	n Extended and Source Freeh. Concel
Run this job now	Prove Clerichtent M Install Result togs Locatio Install Result togs Locatio Control Sattlerer Sob Result Die Parh Con Tet Enrogic Part Install Directory Log File Location Converting Parh Parh	n Extended and Source Freeh. Concel
◯ Schedule	Prove Clerichtent M Install Result top Lotsen Contrait Settings Sohn Result Die Sohn Result Die Sohn Result Die Parks Con Die Result Die Parks Contrait Result Die Parks Par	n
	Prove Clerichtent M Install Result top Locato Install Result top Locato Control Sattlered Control Endpend Sattlered Control Control	n store Orly rectory (get) (get 2) (from As Supp) (from) (cereel Vhen To Run The Job
	Prove Clerichtent M Install Result top Locato Install Result top Locato Control Sattlered Control Endpend Sattlered Control Control	n store Orly rectory (get) (get 2) (from As Supp) (from) (cereel Vhen To Run The Job
Configure Schedule Pattern Configure	Prove Clerichtest M Install Reveals togs Loose Install Around Togs Park P	n
	Prove Clerichtest M Install Areauxis Descention Montain Settless Mon	n III rectary IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Prove Clerichtest M Install Areauxis Descention Montain Settless Mon	n III rectary IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Prove Clerichtest M Install Areauxis Descention Montain Settless Mon	n III rectary IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Prove Clerichtest M Install Areauxis Descention Montain Settless Mon	n III rectary IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Prove Clerichtet M End and Explosion India device for the Park India device for the model device f	n III rectary IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Prove Clerichtet M End and Explosion India device for the Park India device for the model device f	n Ele rectary rectary rectary
	Prove Clerichtet M End and Explosion India device for the Park India device for the model device f	n Ele rectary rectary rectary
	Prove Clerichtet M End and Explosion India device for the Park India device for the model device f	n Ele rectary rectary rectary
	Prove Clerichtet M End and Explosion India device for the Park India device for the model device f	n Ele rectary rectary rectary

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the CommServe computer, click View and then click Admin Job History.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job



End Tir

O Failed

÷

◯ Killed

2 OK Cancel Help

-ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.

Summary

Client Install Option

Start Time

O Completed

Job Stab • All

Number of Jobs View All Jobs O Desired Number of Jobs

Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a Non-Exchange Server



Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

NOTES:

3.

• If any 64-bit agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, create bAllowMultiInstances registry key to install the Exchange *i*DataAgents on separate instance.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

RELATED TOPICS

System Requirements

Firewall

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., hkey_local_machine\software\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

4. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

5. Select the required language.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next.	
		Select the language you will use during installation. English (United States)
		Next> Cancel
6.	Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software. NOTES	
	• This screen will only appear when the <pre>bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit</pre> registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.	<i>≡</i> Software install options
		≡ 32-bit Software install options € Evit
_		
7.	Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.	Installer License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DUWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® 3QL Server ²⁰⁴ 2008 Express Edition, 3QL Server ²⁰⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) End User Linear Assessment C accept the terms in the locense agreement.
		Installer < Back Next > Cancel
8.	If any agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, select Create a new instance option to install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents on separate instance. NOTES	Installer Install Instance Selection Please specify the instance you want to use during install.
	 This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer. 	Instance Selection Create a new instance (Not recommended) Install to existing instance Select an installed instance. Client Name Client Host Name CommServe Name
		Installer <back next=""> Cancel</back>
9.	To install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents expand Client Modules Exchange, and select one or more of the following:	

- Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
- Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

	Installer			
	Select Platforms			
	Select the platforms you	want to configure.		
	E Ca E Common Ter E Common	hnology Engine	platform n descriptio	pointer over a ame to see a n of the platform and
		Il Console	reasons v disabled.	nhy it may be
	⊡ Client Module ⊞ Ca Backup	es & Recovery	Disk Sp	
	🖭 🗅 Web Ba	ndexing and Search ed Search & Browse	Installa	commended) tion Folder:
		fanagement usDataReplicator		0 MB/0 MB ary on C: drive:
	. ↔ BRM	ng Modules		0 MB/ 0 MB
	Tools Installer		×	legistry Keys In Use
	Install Agents for Res	ore Only < Bao	k Next>	Cancel
-				
figure	Installer	le e		
nd	Firewall Configurat Configure firewall servic			
	If there is a firewall bet	veen this machine and the C ervices	ommServe, configure firewa	Il services below.
	connection from here CommServe are block	/indows Firewall is limiting ne to a CommServe's tunnel po ted, and setup should instea	twork traffic. Whether it is p rt, whether all connections I d expect CommServe to co	ossible to open oward nnect back to this
		here is a Proxy in between. open connection to CommSe	rve on tunnel port	
		pen connection toward this n	nachine	
	C CommServe is read	hable only through a proxy		
	Installer		Next >	Cancel
	Installer CommServe Name			×
		computer name and host		
	CommServe (]	
	mycomputer.r	fully-qualified, IP host name; ycompany.com)	for example:	
	mycomputer.	nycompany.com		
	Installer	< Bar	k Next>	Cancel
		\ Dat	Nex()	
	Installer			
	Communication Int Setup will configure the			
		Select a client name audi_cn		
		Select an interface name th communicate with the Comr	at this computer will use to nServe	
		audi.mycompany.com	•	
		IP Address(es) for the selec	ted host.	
	Installer			
		< Bac	k Next>	Cancel

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

11.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name .
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

12. Click Next.

 Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCel programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

	Installer
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
• Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	EXProgram Filest Browse
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Installer < Back Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Dient Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy: Activity Control, Security and Reports.
	Client group: None Selected client_group
	Installer Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to chedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Once Weekly Weekly Weekly Weeksday Wednesday C Tuesday Wednesday C Thursday Saturday Sunday
	Installer < Back Cancel

17. Select a Storage Policy.

Click Next.

14.

15.

16.

NOTES

• A storage policy directs backup data to a media library. Each library has a default storage policy.

X

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 23.

18. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

19. Click Next.

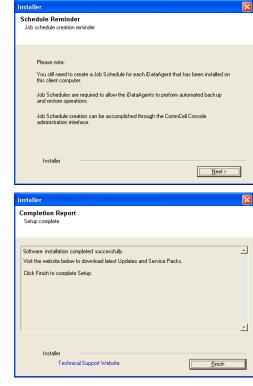
- 20. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 21. Click Next.

Installer	
Storage Policy S	Selection
Select a storage po backed up.	Jicy for the default subclient to be
Configure for	Laptop or Desktop Backup
Select a sto	rage policy from the pull-down list.
	Unassigned
Installer	
THOUGH I	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Storage Policy S	Selection
Configure to	r Laptop or Desktop Backup
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer Exchange Serve	r Name
Please provide Exch	
	Exchange Server
	Exchange Server Name:
	Exchange_Server
	Exchange Server Version Exchange 2007
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	<u> </u>
Installer Summary Summary of install se Setup has enou	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of install se Setup has enou	elections
Installer Summary Summary of install se Setup has enou	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of install se Setup has encu install settings, c	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of instal so Setup has enou instal setting, c Destination Path Commõerve Hoc Interface Name Cient - avad	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\. • = mpcomputer impcompany.com = audi.mpcompany.com
Installer Summary of install se Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path Commisere Hare Lifert - avait Job Result Path	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files.
Installer Summary Summary of initial set Setup has enou initial settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Interface Name Difert - aud Difert - aud Gibbal Filters - I	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\\ = audi.mpcompary.com = audi.mpcompary.com = C.\Program Files\\u00fbPesuits
Installer Summary of install se Setup has enou install settings, of Destination Path CommServe Hos Dient - avaid Job Reauts Path Global Filters = I	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\\ = audi.mpcompary.com = audi.mpcompary.com = C.\Program Files\\u00fbPesuits
Installer Summary of initial set Setup has encu initial setings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Instraige Name Gibbal Filters = 1 Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\ • t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = C:\Program Files\JobResults Jac Cell level policy
Installer Summary of instal s Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere Hore Lifert = aud Job Result Path Global Filters = I Installer Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\ t = mycomputer, mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = del level policy < Back Next Cancel
Installer Summary Ginstell s Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hose District audi Job Presults Path Global Filters = 1 Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = = C:\Program Files\ = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =
Installer Summary Summary of install as Setup has enou install settings, of Destination Path Commõere Hoa Distaller Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admin Mailtox and Profei	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. I = C\Program Files\ I =
Installer Summary Of instal se Setup has enou instal settings, co Destination Path Commisere Hore Lifert - avait Job Results Path Global Filters = I Installer Installer Exchange Admini Information Mailbox and Froffer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. I = C\Program Files\ I =
Installer Summary of install a Summary of install a setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hou Installer Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Installer Maibox and Profile Please enter the Ew the information supp Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick. Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\ = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = C.\Program Files\UobResults Jse Cell level policy
Installer Summary Ginstell = Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Installer Biobal Filters = 4 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Information Mailbox and Profer Please enter the Exc	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = = C:\Program Files\ t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = aud.mycompany.com = C:\Program Files\UoRiesuits Jac Cell level policy Cancel information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with lied.
Installer Summary of install a Summary of install a setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hou Installer Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Installer Maibox and Profile Please enter the Ew the information supp Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek. Next to begin copying files. = C.NProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy Instrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ided.
Installer Summary of instal a Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere How Installer Global Filters = I Installer Exchange Admin Information Malbox and Profei Please enter the Ew How Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek. Next to begin copying files. = C.NProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy Instrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ided.
Installer Summary of instal a Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere How Installer Global Filters = I Installer Exchange Admin Information Malbox and Profei Please enter the Ew How Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek. Next to begin copying files. = C.NProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy Instrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ided.

22. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 17, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

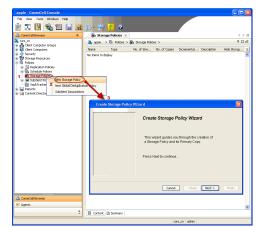
- 23. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the **Storage Policies** and then click **New Storage Policy**.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 24.
- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).



Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.

2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

murphy - CommCell Console : File View Tools		
Summary		
Browse & Recover	🍇 murphy 🗙 💽 Job Controller 🗙	4 0 0
a murphy	murphy >	4 D 8
Comm Resorts	A & Q	•
	ommNet Client Client	Security
	Computer Computers Groups	
Policies Data Replication Monitor		
Barrier Conterner Pata Clarrification Concole 2	19 1a 🖬	1
Add/Remove Software	Install Updates	ontent
	Remove Updates 3	irector
	Install Software	
	Upgrade Software Download Software	
	Copy Software	
	Add/Remove Software Configuration	
🛕 CommCell Browser デ Agents		
* Agencs		
	I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	
	murphy admin	
Installer		×
Instatter		
Install Wizard		
This wizard guides you through the ste	ane required to install software on com	nutore
Click Next to continue.	parequired to install software on com	putera.
	ave As Script Finish Cancel] ∐elp
< Back (Bert >) - Se	ave As Script Finish Cancel] Help
< Bots Installer	ave As Script Finish Cancel	
Installer		
Installer Select the computer's operating sy		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Installer Select the computer's operating sy		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Instatler Select the computer's operating sy O Windows		
Installer Select the computer's operating sy		

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

Installer	
Select how to discover the computers for installing	the software
Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Automatically discover computers	
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	
J	
< Back Next > Save As Script Fi	nish Cancel Help
Bow Base we be by	
Installer	×
Enter the host names of the computers	
Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line	
win08ex07.iddab.loc	Import from File
	Import From Active Directory Select from existing clients
< Back Next > PS//6 As S	rript Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Installer	
Select Software Gache	
Select Software Cache To use current Clent or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To ove Overnde Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clent or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clent or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current client or client orcup Software Cache settings, dick heat. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Overside Software Cache Software Cache: murphy.dowsin.company.com	rriše Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	rriše Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dich Neut. To over Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Murphy domain.company.com	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache Touse current Clerk or Clerk or curso Software Cache settings, dick Next. To ove Overnide Software Cache Overside Software Cache Software Cache murphy.dowsin.company.com	rriše Software Cathe settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dich Neut. To over Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Murphy domain.company.com	rride Software Cache settings check
Select Software Cache To use current client or callent forces Software Cache settings, did, heart, To over Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Extense Cache	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache To use current Clerk or Clerk forcup Software Cache settings, dick Hent, To over Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Extra Cache Extr	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clerk or clerk the software Cache settings, did, Next. To over Overide Software Cache Sof	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clerk or Clerk of Cache Software Cache software Cache and weaks the Software Cache and beach the Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache The provide Software Cache Electric Territory come Installer Installer Reuse Active Directory credentials	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Clert or cup Software Cache settings, did-Next. To over Overnide Software Cache Software	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clerk or Clerk of Cache Software Cache software Cache and weaks the Software Cache and beach the Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache The provide Software Cache Electric Terrory downsh company com Installer Installer Reuse Active Directory credentials	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache To use current client or client orcups Software Cache settings, did, Hent. To over Overnide Software Cache Control Software Cache Control Software Cache Control C	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings direkt
Select Software Cache to consolve Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Entropy, down.company.com Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Orderide Software Cache Improved Software Cache Override Software Cache Improved Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have access to all clents. Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Improved Software Cache Lineacount should have access to all clents. Installer Example: domain (username Password:	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Clert or cup Software Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache	rrish Software Carbo settings check
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Clert or cup Software Cache settings, did. Next. To over Override Software Cache	Inter Software Cashe settings died.

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9.
 - Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a Storage Policy from the drop-down list. Click Next.
 - NOTES:
 - Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

es Data Control Notes Notes Document Data
 SharePoint DataAgent
 Content Indexing and Search
 Online Content Indexing For
 Online Content Indexing For
 Chief Androne Indexing For
 Chief Addrone Agent
 Domino Malkox Archiver Agent
 Loture Notes Add-In Client
 Environe Contenue Archiver < Back Next > P Save As Pinish Cencel Help nter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Client Groups Selected: Laptop Backu Add All >> << Remove All lice Cellies Global Filters Configure For Laptop Backups Storage Policy to use < Back Next > P Serve Cancel Help ter the Install Options for the selected Software ExchangeServer Information Exchange Profile (Optional) User Account Configure Password Maibox Name Profile Name Exchange Database (Optional) User Account Configure Password O Differential Backup Incremental Backup <Book Bent> Save As Script Finish Concel Help Enter Additional Install Options 😑 Installer Flags 🔽 Install Updates Reboot (Frequired) Kill Browser Pr Ignore Running Jobs Stop Oracle Services (if required) Skip clients that are already part of the vCell con 🕑 Delete Packages After Install Ignore Client/Host Name Confi Instal Result Log Location Install Agents For Restore Onl 🗉 Job Re Path CVD Port 8400 🗄 Evingrc Port 8402 🗄 Install Dire Log File Location

CommServe Host Name

< Book Book Save As Script Finish Concel Help

kage(s) to instal SQL Server IDeto SAP for Oracle SAP for MaxDB Sybase DataAge MySQL DataAge 13. Click Finish.

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.
- Job Initiation (Immediate Run this job now 🔿 Schedule <Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Summary Please verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script. Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: No Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB\administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Flags
 Initial Flags
 Initial Typelines: Yes
 Robott of required): No
 Kall Browner Processes (if required): No
 Japore Round, abot: No
 Stop Oracle Services (if required): No
 Stop Oracle Services (if required): No
 Delese Packages After Initial: No
 Japore Clean-Horizon and Configure Yes
 Initial Agains For Restore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installations <Back Mext > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Agent Type Subclient Job Typer 1 Phase E
 Brann
 Figting
 Purnin
 Figting
 Purnin
 Figting
 Purnin
 08/31/2010 11:45:07 CVD 08/31/2010 11:45:07 CVD 08/31/2010 11:41:39 EvMgr5 apple apple 4:345 🌶 🏹 💾 🗞 🕮 📓 🚴 app P 🗆 d 🚴 apple > 2

talle

Please Select When To Run The Job



16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

Admin Job History Filter		X
Job Type		
O AI	🔿 Data Aging	C Export Media
Auxiliary Copy	 Inventory 	O Disaster Recovery Backup
O Data Verification	O Offline Content Indexing	C Erase Media
Erase Backup/Archived Data	O Drive Validation	O Drive Cleaning
Stamp Media	Install/Remove Updates	O Download/Copy Software
Install/Upgrade/Remove Software		SRM Reports/Actions
Information Management	CommCell Export	CommCell Import
Media Refreshing	Recover Store	
Citorian		
Specify Time Range		
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) E	astern Time (US & Canada)	
Start Time	End Time	
Mon 08/30/2010		8/31/2010
12 : 07 PM		12:07 PM
Job Status		
O All ○ Con	pleted O Failed	○ Killed
Number of Jobs	,	(land
Number of Jobs		
 View All Jobs 		
O Desired Number of Jobs	10 -	
Include Aged Data	<u>P</u>	
Include Aged Data		
	2	OK Cancel Help
🛞 Admin Job History 🗴 🤽 accle 🗴		4 0 00
		4 C 4
Tostal Software 20 Scorolate	11 advin	or C Storag Autom Legal Legal S NA NA NA A
	submit Job	
	w Events	
	w Content Index 🔸	
Se	nd Logs	×
Total records count : 9		

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job
- **18.** Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents in clustered environment on the following:

- Exchange Server 2003
- Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on the following:

- Direct install on a Exchange Server or
- On an Non-Exchange Server computer. This may be used for the following circumstances:
 In the configuration where a single non-Exchange client is used to backup multiple Exchange Servers.
 - To off-load the backup of Exchange Server, so that the performance of the Exchange Server will not be effected.

RELATED TOPICS

- **Download Software Packages** Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.
- **System Requirements** Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.
- Firewall Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
Next >	Cancel
≓ Install Software on this computer	
I Advanced options	
View documentation website	
 View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader 	
	⊜ Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next .	Installer 🛛 🔀
		License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press
		the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
		Software Release 9.0.0
		(including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
		2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
		Event Tissues Assessment
		C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
		Installer
6.	Select Configure a Virtual Server .	Installer 🛛 🔀
	Click Next .	Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		Configuration Options
		C Configure the Physical node
		C Configure a ⊻ittual server
		< Back <u>Next></u>
7.	Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides.	Installer
	Click Next.	Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure
		Select the virtual server you would like to conligue
		Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
		Chaose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
8.	To install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents expand Client Modules Exchange , and select	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following:	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent 	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent 	Configured on this cluster. COUGCUNTERVINS Cancel Installer Select Platforms Select Platforms Select he platforms you want to configure. Do Compose Lectorology Engine Move the pointer over a platform name to see a
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent 	Configured on this cluster. COUCH AND
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent 	configured on this cluster. 20030/usterVMS < Back Mext> Common Technology Engine Mexter Modules District Modules
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive	configured on this cluster. 20030ListeVMS < <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel Installer Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Occommon Technology Engine Backup & Reconde Disk Space Disk Space Disk Space Disk Space Disk Space
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:	configured on this cluster. 20030ListeVMS < Back Next>
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: Exchange Compliance Archiver	configured on this cluster. Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Concollate/VMS
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: Exchange Compliance Archiver Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent	configured on this cluster. 200301/0144/MS < 200301/0144/MS < <td< th=""></td<>
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: • Exchange Compliance Archiver • Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent • Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent	configured on this cluster. 200301/0144/MS 200301/0144/MS Back Next> Cancel Installer Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Common Technology Engine Common Technology Common Techno

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Next}}.$

9.

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

machin	e, or whether	there is a Proxy				neul back to this
🖸 This	machine can	open connectio	n to CommServ		el port	
C Com	mServe can (open connection	toward this mai	chine		
C Com	mServe is rea		ugh a proxy			
	nstaller					
	ristaller				Next >	Cancel
nstaller						
	e rve Name he CommServ	e computer nam	e and host			
	CommServe	Client Name				
	CommServe (Enter a valio mycomputer.	Host Name d, fully-qualified, II mycompany.com	P host name; fo)	r example	:	
	mycomputer	. mycompany.com	n			
h	nstaller					
			< Back	Г	Next>	Cancel
						X
nstaller Commu	vigation In	terface Nam				
		e communication				
		Select a client	name			
		audi_cn			•	
					_	
		Select an interf communicate v	ace name that	this comp	uter will use to	
		Commanded o		0.10		
		audi.mycompa	ny.com		-	
		IP Address(es)	for the selected	i host.		
h	nstaller			_		
			< Back		Next >	Cancel
nstaller						
		Exclusion Li municate through				
Win	dows Firewall	is ON				
$\overrightarrow{\mathbf{v}}$ Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List						
If yo excl	u plan on usir usion list.	g Windows Firev	vall, it is recomn	nended to	add the softwar	e programs to the

< Back

Next >

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
		Click. Next to accept the default location, or click. Browse to choose an alternal Destination Folder Program Flock Brow
		Drive List C: 928 MB Installer Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB Installer K Back Next >
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
		Client group: None Selected client_group
		Installer < Back Next >
15.	Click Next.	
15.	CICK NEXL.	Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
		Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
		✓ Schedule Install of Autometic Updates Once ✓ Weekly ✓ Weekly ✓ Monday ✓ Tuesiday ✓ Wednesday ✓ Thursday ✓ Friday ✓ Saturday ✓ Sunday Installer ✓ Back Next>
16.	Select a Storage Policy . Click Next .	Installer Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned Installer Kext >
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installor Streens Beller Selandar
	Click OK .	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 32.	Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Installer CBack Next >

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

e location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

×

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backup Option	ns
Please select a default backup	
C Differential	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup, Does not purge the
	transaction logs.
Incremental	Backs up changes in the Information
, morenerica	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then
	purged.
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	×
Enter Administrator acco	
Enter Administrator account info	ormation
Account I	Name
Account	tano.
A	Deserved.
Account	Password:
Domain:	
EXCH	
L'ION	
	<u>N</u> ext>
Installer	
Summary Summary of install selections	
saminary or matal selections	
Setup has enough informati install settings, click Next to	ion to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the begin copying files.
	<u></u>
Destination Path = C:\Prog	ram Files\
CommServe Host = mycom	puter.mycompany.com
Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi	
Job Results Path = C:\Prog	
Global Filters = Use Cell lev	<u>×</u>
<	
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Please verify that Gr backup operations.	cular Logging is disabled before performing any database
backup operations.	
	ПК

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - **Exchange Server Name** Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

 Domain - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

nstaller			×	
Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange server	name			
Exch	Server ange Server Name: ange_Server ange Server Version ange 2007	¥		
installer	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	<u>C</u> ancel	
Installer				
Summary Summary of install selections				
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.				
	< Back	Next>	Cancel	
_			_	
Installer			\mathbf{X}	
Exchange Administrator A Information Mailbox and Profile information	ccount			
Please enter the Exchange acco the information supplied. Account Name:	ount information required be		be created with	
Account Password:	Exchar	ige Server Name:		
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domair	r		
Installer				
	< Back	Next >	Cancel	

Installer	
?	Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?
	Yes No

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator accou Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selecte previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the inst interrupted if necessary.

Click Stop to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones comple

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the ٠ attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the instal • will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes w 28. installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the softwa that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

	Installer
	Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure
nt :d in the	Preferred Nodes Selected Nodes VmcLuster2 Selected Nodes Selected Nodes VmcLuster1 Next> Cancel Installer Selected Nodes Domain administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account
	Domain Account Information User Name (<domain\user>): [LAB\vdministrator Account Password: </domain\user>
tall can be	Installer
ete.	You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
e install	Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2
ll attempt	Installed successfultr 0 Left to install.
e or is u do,	Installed successfully: U Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
а	Installer Advanced Settings Stop
	Installer
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 ቷ minutes Time to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 🚽 minutes
vere	Installer
	Results Remote install results
are on	Summary of remote install
	The following software (Version) were selected to be installed:

REAL2: Install succeeded

*

<u>F</u>inish

X

30. Click Next.

31. Click Finish.

-
Installer
Summary
Summary of install selections
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\
CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com
Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client =audi
Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy
S
Installer
< Back Next > Cancel
Installer
Schedule Reminder
Job schedule creation reminder
Please note:
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on
this client computer.
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
and the restance of restance.
Installer
Next >
Installer
Completion Report
Setup complete
each anna
Software installation completed successfully.
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.
Click Finish to complete Setup.
×
Lotelle.
Installer
Technical Support Website Finish

5

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 16, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

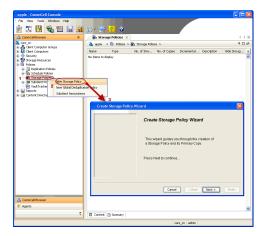
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

32. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

33.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

< Previous Next >

Getting Started Configuration - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

Once installed, configure a target mailbox and create a subclient as follows.

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- Right-click Exchange Compliance Archiver and then click Properties.

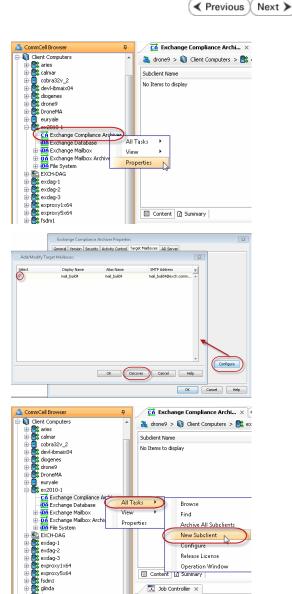
- 2. Click the Target Mailbox tab.
 - Click Configure.
 - Click Discover.
 - Check the destination mailbox to which messages will be retrieved in the **Select** column.

The mailbox selected is often a mailbox created specifically for compliance purposes.

• Click OK.

1.

3. Right-click Exchange Compliance Archiver and then click New Subclient.



4. Enter a name for the subclient.

Click the Content tab.

• Click the **Configure** button.

6. Click Discover.

× Subclient Properties of Pre/Post Process Storage Device Activity Control General Context Security Filters Client Name: ex2010-1 Billing Dep artment Agent Type: Exchange Compliance Archiver Subclient name: Description OK Cancel Help × Subclient Properties of Pre/Post Process Storage De General Security Control Activity Content Filters Contents of subclient: Display Name SMTP Address Alias Name × Total: 0 mailbox(es). Configure Delete Archived messages after successful archive operations. OK Cancel Help × Add/Modify Mailboxes Display Name SMTP Address Alias Name Subclient × Change all selected mailboxes to: OK Discover Cancel Help

- Select one journal mailbox listed in the Mailbox Name list for your first archive.
 - In the **Change all selected mailboxes to** list, click the name of the subclient created above.
 - Click OK.

7.

9.

- Click the Storage Devices tab.
 - Select a **Storage Policy**.
 - Click OK.

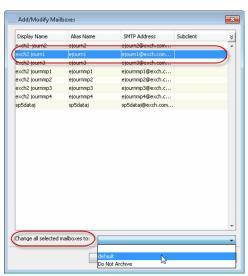
Click Next > to continue.

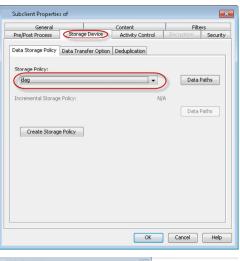
If you do not have Storage Policy created, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Create Storage Policy}}$ and proceed to the next step.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - o Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.
 - Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.
 - From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
 - $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
 - $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
 - From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.







Previous Next >

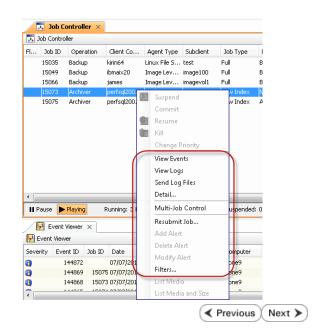
Getting Started Archive - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

Previous Next >

WHAT	GETS ARCHIVED	WHAT DOES NOT GET ARCHIVED				
	oxes configured for Standard	Journal mailboxes not included in the subclie	ent.			
Journalir	ng.	Mailboxes that are not configured for Standard Journaling. See Configure Archives of All Mailboxes to configure this capability.				
	 From the CommCell Console, naviga Exchange Compliance Archiver. Right-click the subclient and click A 	ate to Client Computers <client> </client> rchive.	▲ Connel Browser ■ Clerk Computers ■ ■ Content © Summ			
	 Click Immediate. Click OK. 		Archive Options for Subclient: test Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern			
3.	You can track the progress of the job f	rom the Job Controller .	Nationality 13 II No Consider 13 II No Consider 14 III No Do Conder 10 III No Do Conder 10 IIII No Do Conder 10 IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII			
4.	Once the job is complete, view the det select Archive History .	ails of job right-clicking the Subclient and	▲ connected browser ■ Content			
5.	Click OK .		Compliance Archive History Filter for: test Image: Completed Faled Killed > Specify Time Range Time Zone: (UTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada) Image: Completed Start Time End Time Image: Completed Image: Completed Image: Completed Faled Killed			

OK Cancel Advanced Help

- 6. Right-click the job to:
 - View items that failed, if any, during the job.
 - Resubmit the job.
 - View job details, such as the number of mailboxes backed up.
 - View events associated with the job.
 - Send the log file that is associated with the job.



Getting Started Recover - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

It is recommended that you perform a recover operation immediately after your first archive to understand the process.

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client>* | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
 - Right-click the default backup set and then click **All Tasks | Browse**.

2. Click OK.

- Expand the **subclient** and select the mailbox that you want to recover.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- 4. Click To PST File.

з.

- Select Local Drive.
- Click Browse to locate the path.

derstand the process.		
🔓 CommCell Browser 🛛 🖗	💣 defaultArchiveSet 🗴	
Client Computers	🚵 drone9 > 🚺 Client Compute	ers > 🚉 ex2010-1 >
e 🔐 aries	Subclient Name	
Cobra32v_2 Cobra32v_2 Cobra32v_4	default	
devl-ibmaix04	test	
 R diogenes R drone9 		
🗄 📆 DroneMA		
euryale		
CA Exchange Compliance Archiver	🖾 Content 👔 Summary	
- DA Exchange Database	Job Controller 🗙	
Exchange Mailbox	Job Controller	
fr defaultArebinGat		Lo Agent Type
All Tasks	Archive All Subclients	Linux File S
EXCH-DAG EXCH-DAG Exch-DAG Exch-DAG Exch-DAG Exch-DAG Exch-ga-1 Properties exdag-2 exdag-3	Erase Stubs	D Image Lev
Properties	Browse	Image Lev
🗈 💽 exdag-3	Find	
exproxy1x64 exproxy5x64	Configure	
B C fsdm1	Operation Window	
🕀 🚉 glinda	New Subclient	_
ibmaix02	New Suberiene	
Browse Options		×
Browse the Latest Data		
Specify Browse Time		
Browse Data Before:		
Thu 07/07/2011	- 02 : 37 PM	1-4
113 37 107 2011		
Time Zone: (UTC-05:	00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	· ·
Client Computer: ex2010-1		
Client Computer: ex2010-1		
Use MediaAgent		
Use MediaAgent <any mediaagen<="" th=""><th>1></th><th>•</th></any>	1>	•
✓ Show Deleted Items		
Page Size: 1000 🕂		
100		
OK Cancel	Advanced List Media	Help
	Advanced List Media) Help
	Advanced List Media) Help
	Advanced List Media	Help *C
	Advanced List Media	15 Help 84 84 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85 85
	Advanced List Media	Help 86 86 86 97 96 97 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 97 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 96 96
OK Cancel	Advanced List Media	Help 12 Non 100 Non 100
OK Cancel	Advanced List Media	1500
OK Cancel	Advanced List Media	Help ***
	Advanced List Media	Help To To To To To To To To To To To To To
CK Cancel	Advanced List Media	нер 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	нер К К К К К К К К К К К К К К К К К К К
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel	Note Weit Sam We	
CK Cancel		
CK Cancel CK Cancel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Con		
CK Cancel		
CK Cancel CK Cancel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel Concel		
CK Cancel		
CK Cancel CK Cancel Concel		
CK Cancel		
CK Cancel		
CK Cancel CK Cancel CK Cancel C C Concel C Concel	riget is a DataAirchiver stub	

< Previous

Next >

- 5. Select the path and click Add.
 - Close the window.

Browse for PST Path					
ex2010-1	Name \$Recycle.Bin	Size	Type Folder	Modified 7/13/09 10:34 PM	*
🕀 🦲 \$Recycle.Bin	Boot		Folder	4/25/11 2:37 PM	1
#Recycle.Bin Boot creshdumps	bootmgr	374.79 KB	File	11/20/10 4:40 AM	
Documents and Settings		8 KB	File	9/7/10 5:30 PM	
	crashdumps Documents and Settings		Folder	7/7/11 10:28 AM 7/14/09 1:06 AM	
B MSOCache	DynCacheInstaller.log	5.25 KB	File	6/27/11 11:51 AM	
PerfLogs Proverselation of the second of the seco	ExchangeSetupLogs		Folder	6/6/11 2:57 PM	
Program Files	inetpub MSOCache		Folder	9/7/10 3:05 PM 6/7/11 10:44 AM	
Charling Security MSOCache MSOCache Program Files Program Files (S6)	pagefile.sys	3 GB	File	6/24/11 1:26 PM	
Becovery	PerfLogs		Folder	7/13/09 11:20 PM	
System Volume Information Users	Powershell scripts		Folder	5/9/11 12:24 PM	
Windowe	Program Files Program Files (x86)		Folder	6/27/11 11:47 AM 6/7/11 10:46 AM	
E.	ProgramData		Folder	6/29/11 2:09 PM	
F:	Recovery		Folder	9/7/10 1:34 PM	
I:	System Volume Inform Users		Folder	7/6/11 12:18 PM 4/28/11 2:53 PM	
1 I	Users Windows		Folder	4/28/11 2:53 PM 6/7/11 10:46 AM	
F: G: J: X:				4.1.1.1.101.101.011	
A	idd Close	New Folder]		
Recover Options for All Selected Iten	ns:				×
eneral Job Initiation					
To Mailbox					
Recovery Destination					
Destination client ex2010-1					Ŧ
Recover to Same Paths					
Specify destination path					
specity deschadon pach					
				Brows	8
When message exists					
0 Hours 10					
 Unconditional Overwrite 					
Unconditionally over	urite only if terrest is a r	ata ûrebi we st	ub		
unconditionally over	mike only in target is a L	-acamrchiver sti			
Append					
() myseria					
Skip					
To DET Elso		-		-	
 To PST File 					
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	owse
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	owse
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	owse
				Bro	owse
Local Drive Network					
Local Drive Network	E OK Cancel	Advance	d 🖪	Bro ⇒ Save As Script	Help
Local Drive Network		Advance	d 🛛		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected		Advance	id [
Local Drive Network		Advance	d		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected		Advance	d		Help
Local Drive Network		Advance	d		Help
Local Drive Network		Advance	id 🛛 😰		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected eneral Job Initiation Job Initiation i Immediate		Advance	d B		Help
Local Drive Network		Advance	d		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected aneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Inmediate Run this job now		Advance	d D		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected eneral Job Initiation Job Initiation i Immediate		Advance	id 🕃		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected aneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Inmediate Run this job now		Advance	d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected aneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Inmediate Run this job now	i items:	Configure	d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d J		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d 3		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d 3		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		bi		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		4		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d g		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d B		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		d ()		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	i items:		4		Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation inmediate Run this job now Schedule	f Items:				Help
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected eneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Patte	f Items:	Configure		► Save As Scrpt	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected eneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Patte	f Items:	Configure		► Save As Scrpt	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter interal Job Initiation Job Initiation Timmedate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Credule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedul	f Items:	Configure		► Save As Scrpt	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected ieneral 3ob Initiation 3ob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Configu	f Items:	Configure		► Save As Scrpt	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter inneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte S Ab Contexter X	rn (Configure)))))))))))))))))))	Save As Script we As Script	нер Нер
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected ieneral 3ob Initiation 3ob Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedu	rn (Cancel /	Configure wavanced	• Sa	> Save As Script	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected ieneral 3ob Initiation 3ob Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedu	rn (Cancel /	Configure dvanced	₽ Rodadi 1974	Save As script	нер Нер
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral 26b Initiation 27b In	rn (Cancel 4 Sadder: 38 type 11 Indiano Fri Concel	Configure Configure Manager Storager Configure Storager Configure Storager Configure	P. Madat	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected interal Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte S Notoender × ADD Generan Gent Co Agent Yes Too Biology Ward Too Too Too Too Too Too Too Too Too To	rn (Sacker 30 type II test PA III Sacker A III III Sacker A IIII IIII Sacker A IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Configure Konned	P.: Hoddyddiad	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected inneral 26b Initiation 27b In	rn (Sacker 30 type II test PA III Sacker A III III Sacker A IIII IIII Sacker A IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Configure Configure Manager Storager Configure Storager Configure Storager Configure	P. Madat	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selected interal Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte S Notoender × ADD Generan Gent Co Agent Yes Too Biology Ward Too Too Too Too Too Too Too Too Too To	rn (Sacker 30 type II test PA III Sacker A III III Sacker A IIII IIII Sacker A IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Configure Konned	P. Madat	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	rn (Cancel A Societ Schape II tes A from III tes A from II tes A from III tes A from IIII tes A from IIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Configure Advanced Market Mark	29 Hotada 19 1974 19 1974 20 Handa	Save As Script	
	rn (Cancel A Societ Schape II tes A from III tes A from II tes A from III tes A from IIII tes A from IIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIII tes A from IIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIIII tes A from IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Configure Advanced Market Mark	29 Hotada 19 1974 19 1974 20 Handa	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	f Items: f Items: f Cancel / Subdext 3ab type If test Ind Ea Subdext 3ab type If test Ind Ea Each Ind Ea Each Ind Each Ind Each Ind Ea	Configure idvanced istration of the state of the state istration of the state of th	P. Medalo Market Sectors Market Sect	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	f Items: f Items: f Cancel / Subdext 3ab type If test Ind Ea Subdext 3ab type If test Ind Ea Each Ind Ea Each Ind Each Ind Each Ind Ea	Configure idvanced istration of the state of the state istration of the state of th	P. Medalo Market Sectors Market Sect	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	fi Items: fi Items: f	Configure configure was Strong to configure was Strong to configure to	P. Medalo Market Sectors Market Sect	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	fi Items: fi Items: fin (Sacket Ab Type It test Ind Items test Ind Items test Ind Items test Ind Items Fin (Sacket Ab Type Items Fin (Fin (Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
Local Drive Network	fi Items: fi Items: fin (Sacket Ab Type It test Ind Items test Ind Items test Ind Items test Ind Items Fin (Sacket Ab Type Items Fin (Fin (Configure configure was Strong to configure was Strong to configure to	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
	rn (Sacker & Ab Type II test Ind II Backer Ad II Sacker Ad III Sacker Ad IIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIII Sa	Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
	rn (Sacker & Ab Type II test Ind II Backer Ad II Sacker Ad III Sacker Ad IIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIII Sa	Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
	rn (Sacker & Ab Type II test Ind II Backer Ad II Sacker Ad III Sacker Ad IIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIII Sa	Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
	rn (Sacker & Ab Type II test Ind II Backer Ad II Sacker Ad III Sacker Ad IIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIII Sa	Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	
	rn (Sacker & Ab Type II test Ind II Backer Ad II Sacker Ad III Sacker Ad IIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIIIIIII Sacker Ad IIIIIIIII Sa	Configure Configure to the Strong Str	9 - Nededa	Save As Script	

All Tasks

Properties

Archiving History Recovery History

Schedules

 $\textbf{6.} \qquad \text{Append the path with the PST file name. Ensure to include the .pst file extension.}$

- Click the Job Initiation tab and select Immediate.
 - Click OK.

- 8. You can monitor the progress of the restore job from the **Job Controller**.
- 9. Once the restore job has completed, right-click the agent and click **View** | **Recover History**.

- **11.** Right-click the job and do one of the following:
 - View Job Details.
 - View Paths.
 - View Events of the recover job.
 - View or send log files of the restore job.
 - Resubmit the job if the job is not too old.

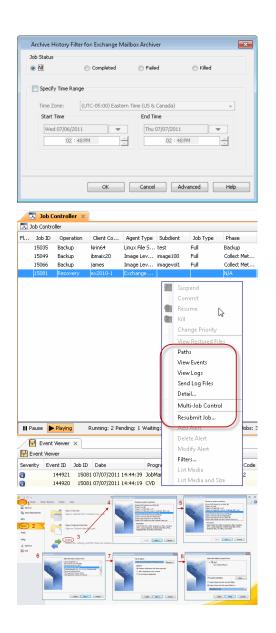
12. Import the PST file into Outlook.

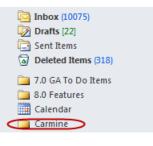
This step is based on Outlook 2010. The steps and screen may be different if you are using another version of Outlook.

- Click File and then click Open.
- Click Import.
- Select Import from another program or file option and click Next.
- Under File Type, select Outlook Data File (.pst) and click Next.
- Click Browse and choose the .pst that was restored and click Next.
- Choose to import the file to the current folder or choose another folder and click **Finish**.

When **Import items into the same folder** is selected, the data from the imported file will be added to the same folder in Outlook if the folder matches. If the folder doesn't match in Outlook, it will be created.

13. View the imported folder in Outlook.





Previous Next >

Advanced Configuration - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Understanding the CommCell Console

Change the Target Mailbox

Configuring Archives by Date Older than a Specific Date After a Specific Date

Configuring Archives of All Mailboxes

Configuring Archives of Disabled Mailboxes

Configuring a Subclient

Filtering Subclients

Exclude Specific Mailboxes Filter Mailbox Folders using Regular Expressions Filter Specific Folders

Specifying Domain Information

Enhancing Mailbox Discovery Using CSVDE Filter

Disabling Compliance Archiving

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

UNDERSTANDING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

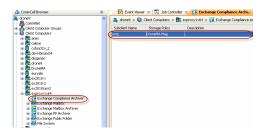
The Exchange Compliance Archiver *i*DataAgent uses the following logical entities to manage archiving and recovery operations from the CommCell Console.

AGENT

Defines the Exchange Server to be archived.

SUBCLIENT

Defines the items to be archived.

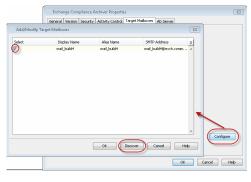


CHANGE THE TARGET MAILBOX

The target mailbox is the mailbox to which archived messages will be recovered. This mailbox is often created specifically for compliance purposes.

If you would like to change the target mailbox from that which was initially configured after installation, you can do so as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click Exchange Compliance Archiver and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Target Mailbox tab.
- 4. Click Configure.
- 5. Click Discover.
- 6. Check the destination mailbox to which messages will be retrieved in the **Select** column.
- 7. Click **OK**.



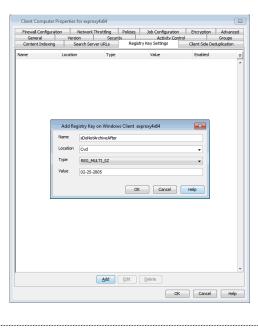
CONFIGURING ARCHIVES BY DATE

You can configure Exchange Compliance Archiver to only archive messages that are older than a specified date or after a specified dates described in the following sections.

OLDER THAN A SPECIFIC DATE

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.

- 2. Right-click *<Client>* and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name box, type sDoNotArchiveBefore.
- 6. In the Location box, type ExchangeArchiver.
- 7. In the **Type** box, select **STRING**.
- 8. In the Value box, type mm-dd-yyyy.
 - For example, 02-25-2005, to archive messages older than 02-25-2005.
- 9. Click **OK**.



AFTER A SPECIFIC DATE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click <*Client*> and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name box, type sDoNotArchiveAfter.
- 6. In the Location box, type ExchangeArchiver.
- 7. In the **Type** box, select **STRING**.
- 8. In the Value box, type mm-dd-yyyy.

For example, 02-25-2005, to archive messages after 02-25-2005.

9. Click **OK**.

Firewall Configura	tion	Network Throttling	Policies	Job Configuration	Encryption	Advanced
General	Versi	on Secur	ritv	Activity Contro	i	Groups
Content Indexing	Se	arch Server URLs	Regist	ry Key Settings	Client Side Dec	luplication
ame	Location	Туре		Value	Enabled	
	Add Reg Name Location	istry Key on Windov sDoNotArchiveBefor Cvd		proxy4x64		
- 1	Type					
	Type	REG_MULTI_SZ			•	
	Value	02-25-2005	ОК	Cancel	Help	

CONFIGURE ARCHIVES OF ALL MAILBOXES

The Exchange Compliance Archiver discovers and archives Journaling mailboxes defined through the Exchange Server. (The journal mailbox captures new incoming and outgoing messages.) If you want to archive messages that exist outside of the journal mailbox, i.e., messages that were sent and/or delivered before archives of the journal began or mailboxes configured using Premium Journaling then you must archive the non-journaling mailboxes on the server.

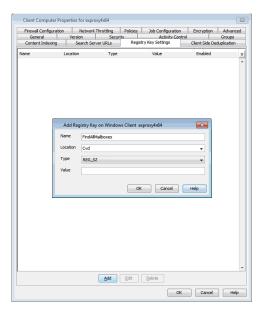
Once the option is configured, you will be able to discover all mailboxes and add them as subclient content to be archived.

Make sure that the **Delete Archived messages after successful archive operations** option is not selected when configuring subclient content for this operation. Otherwise, all of the messages that are archived will be deleted from the mailboxes. This option should only be selected when archiving journaling mailboxes.

Use the following steps to enable this option.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click <*Client*> and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.

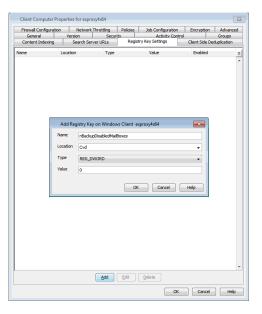
- 5. In the Name box, type FindAllMailboxes.
- 6. In the Location box, type ExchangeArchiver.
- 7. In the Type box, select REG_SZ.
- 8. In the **Value** box, type any character (for example, <xyz>).
- 9. Click **OK**.



CONFIGURING ARCHIVES OF DISABLED MAILBOXES

By default, the Mailboxes whose user accounts are disabled from the Active Directory are not archived. To include them in the archive operation, follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click <*Client*> and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name box, type nBackupDisabledMailBoxes.
- 6. In the Location box, type ExchangeArchiver.
- 7. In the **Type** box, select **REG_DWORD**.
- 8. In the **Value** box, type a numeric value greater than 0 to enable archiving of disabled mailboxes.
- 9. Click OK.



CONFIGURING A SUBCLIENT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- Right-click the < Exchange Compliance Archiver>, point to All Tasks, and then click New Subclient.
- 3. In the **Subclient Name** box, type a name.
- 4. Click the **Storage Device** tab, in the **Storage Policy** box, select a Storage policy, and then click **OK**.

Properties of te	stArchiveset	×
General Auto Discove		
Enable Auto Disc	over	
Match mailbox	es by regular expressions	
🔵 Database Affi	nity	
(AD User Group	Affinity	
	OK Cancel He	
		Ψ
Configure AD User	Group for Auto-discovery	X
AD User Group Name	Subclient	×
		^
Authentie	cate Active Directory Domain Controller 🛛 🔀	
Domain Name		
User Name:	Administrator	
Password:	••••••	
	OK Cancel Help	
		~
Yove all selected items to		
ОК	Cancel Discover Help	

- 1. Click the **Content** tab, and then click **Configure**.
- 2. Click **Discover**. The mailboxes will be displayed.
- Assign the mailbox to the subclient by clicking the **Subclient** column and selecting one from the drop-down list. Alternatively, you can assign all Mailboxes to one subclient in **Change all selected mailboxes to** box.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK**.

FILTERING SUBCLIENTS

EXCLUDE SPECIFIC MAILBOXES

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab, and then click **Configure**.
- 4. Click **Discover**.
- 5. Click Yes.
- Select the mailbox you want to exclude and, in the Subclient column, select Do Not Archive from the drop-down list.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Display Name	Alias Name	SMTP Address	Subclient	2
Caryn Fosdyke	CaFosdyke	CaFosdyke@TEST	smtp	-
Cathrine Dunlap	CaDunlap	CaDunlap@.test1	smtp	
3par user1	3par1	3par1@exch.com		
3par user2	3par2	3par2@exch.com		
3par user3	3par3	3par3@exch.com		
AlbertinA Angell	AlAngell	AlAngell@exch.co		
AnnmArie Thrasher	AnThrasher	AnThrasher@exc		
Berenice Reynard	BeReynard	BeReynard@exch		
Blake Blasedale	BIBlasedale	BlBlasedale@exch		
Blondell Kyle	BlKyle	BlKyle@exch.com		
Cameron Milbourne	CaMilbourne	CaMilbourne@exc		
Caridad Darsie	CaDarsie	CaDarsie@exch.c		
Carolann Donohue	CaDonohue	CaDonohue@exc		
Chana Beckwith	ChBeckwith	ChBeckwith@exch		
Chang Moel	ChMoel	ChMoel@exch.co		
Chaya Denford	ChDenford	ChDenford@exch		
Cherelle Atherton	ChAtherton	ChAtherton@exc		
Christinia Lefevre	ChLefevre	ChLefevre@exch		
CiCely Vanderveer	CiVanderveer	CiVanderveer@ex		
Cinthia Barker	CiBarker	CiBarker@exch.co		
Change all selected r	mailboxes to: sm	itp		5

FILTER MAILBOX FOLDERS USING REGULAR EXPRESSIONS

You can also apply regular expressions or wildcards patterns to filter folders in mailboxes from data protection. For example, you may want to exclude all Sent Items folders that are not essential for recovery. The pattern you enter will be applied to all content defined for the subclient.

WILDCARD EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE	DESCRIPTION
Sent*	To filter out a folder which begins with Sent , specify the name of the folder and the asterisk * wildcard with no delimiters.
Sent Items\test*	To filter out a subfolder called test , specify the full path including the leader $igvee$ backslash.
\test	To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader \ backslash and the asterisk * wildcard for the first level.

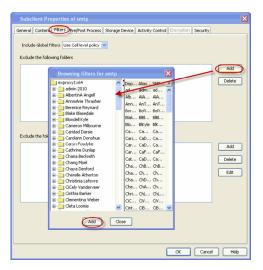
1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.

- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 4. Click Add next to Exclude the folders that contain the following patterns.
- Type the regular expressions or wildcard patterns, each on a separate line. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Subc	lient Prope	rties of smtp				
General	Content Filt	ers Pre/Post Process	Storage Device	Activity Control	Encryption	Security
Incluc	de Global Filters	Use Cell level policy	~			
Exclud	e the following	folders				
						Add
						Delete
Exclud	e the folders th	nat contain the following	patterns			
r		nat contain the following) patterns			Add
	Enter Path				×	Add
	Enter Path	nat contain the following terns with new line as a			×	Delete
	Enter Path				×	-
	Enter Path					Delete
	Enter Path				×	Delete
Ple	Enter Path					Delete
Pir	Enter Path ease enter path					Delete
Ple	Enter Path ease enter path		separator			Delete
Pir	Enter Path ease enter path		separator			Delete

FILTER SPECIFIC FOLDERS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Filters tab.
- 4. Click Add next to Exclude the following folders.
- 5. Select the desired mailbox user, and expand the folders to select the folders that you want to exclude from archive operation, and then click **Add**.
- 6. Click OK.



SPECIFYING DOMAIN INFORMATION

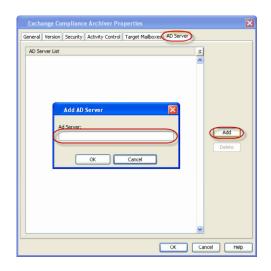
It may be necessary to specify additional domain names for Archives in the following circumstances:

- The Exchange Server is installed in a different domain from the schema master.
- Multiple domain controllers exist that may not replicate to each other.

To ensure complete protection in these circumstances, perform the following.

1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Compliance Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.

- 2. Click the **AD Server** tab.
- 3. To include a domain name, click Add.
- 4. In the AD Server box, type the domain name. You can enter an IP address or the fully-qualified domain name of the Active Directory Server. Depending on the circumstances discussed above, the domains to include should be:
 - The schema master, or
 - o Each domain controller in your environment
- 5. Click OK. The domain name will appear in the AD Server List.
- 6. Repeat the previous step for each domain name that you wish to include.
- 7. Click OK.



ENHANCING MAILBOX DISCOVERY USING CSVDE FILTER

A Comma Separated Value Directory Exchange (CSVDE) filtering option is provided to increase performance for auto-discovery operations in cases where the discovery process may take a long time to complete.

A CSVDE filtering example is provided below, which will filter out system mailboxes residing on the SERVERNAME server from discovery operations for these agents:

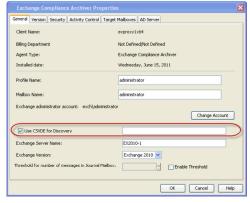
"(&(msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=SERVERNAME)(!(CN=SystemMailbox{*)))"

Use of this option requires expert-level knowledge of CSVDE, which is a Microsoft tool used for extracting and filtering information from Active Directory. Familiarity with constructing LDAP queries is beneficial for successful filtering. Incorrect use of the CSVDE filtering option can result in failed discovery and data protection operations. For more information on CSVDE, refer to documentation from Microsoft Corporation.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Mailbox Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.
- Select the Use CSVDE For Discovery checkbox, and then specify the desired CSVDE filter in the Use CSVDE for Discovery box.

3. Click OK.

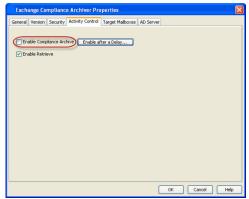
The next time a discovery operation is run, the user-specified CSVDE filter will be used.



DISABLING COMPLIANCE ARCHIVING

Use the following steps to disable compliance archiving.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Compliance Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.
- 2. Click the Activity Control tab.
- 3. Clear the Enable Compliance Archive checkbox.
- 4. Click OK.



MODIFYING AN AGENT OR SUBCLIENT

There are several configurable properties available for your agent that can be modified from the agent or subclient level as per your need.

It is recommended that that you do not modify the properties of a subclient when a job is in progress for that specific subclient. If a job is in progress, either wait for the job to complete or kill the job from the Job Controller.

The following table describes the properties that can be configured from the agent and subclient levels.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Change the Profile Name	You can modify the profile that is associated with the appropriate Administrator Mailbox.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Compliance Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Profile Name box, type the profile name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Mailbox Name	You can modify the name of the mailbox that is associated with the appropriate Administrator profile.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>>.	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Compliance Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Mailbox Name box, type the mailbox name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Exchange Server Name	You can modify the name of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. However, the Exchange server name should not be the same as Client or Host Name.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Compliance Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Exchange Server Name box, type the Exchange Server name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Exchange	You can select and modify the version of the Exchange Server from the list.	
Version	You can modify the name of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. However, the Exchange server name should not be the same as Client or Host Name.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Compliance Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Exchange Version list, select the Exchange server version.	
	4. Click OK .	
Change User Account Details	You must have Exchange administrator privileges to access the Exchange Server and perform Archive and restore operations.	
	In the case of Archive and restore operations from the CommCell Console, the user credentials to access the Exchange Server are provided initially when you installed the Agent. You can modify the user credentials from CommCell Console.	
	On Windows clients, use <domain>\<administrator_name></administrator_name></domain>	
	To change the Exchange administrator account information associated with this agent:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Compliance Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. Click Change Account.	
	4. In Exchange Administrator Account box type the Account name.	
	5. In the Password box, type Password	
	6. In the Confirm Password box, type the password again.	
	7. Click OK .	
Change Storage Policies	You can modify the storage policies in any of the following situations:	Refer to Storage Policies.
_	• To include a different media for the backup operation.	
	• To use a storage policy with a different retention criteria.	
	You can change the storage policies from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties .	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select the Storage policy from the drop-down menu.	

	5. Click OK .	
Data Transfer Options	You can efficiently configure the available resources for transferring data secured by data protection operations from the subclient level. This includes the following:	Refer to Data Compression ar Network Bandwidth Throttling
	• Enable or disable Data Compression either on the client or the MediaAgent.	
	 Configure the transfer of data in the network using the options for Network Bandwidth Throttling and Network Agents. 	
	You can configure the data transfer options.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Click Data Transfer Option tab.	
	5. Choose the appropriate software compression option for this subclient.	
	6. Select Throttle Network Bandwidth and set the required bandwidth.	
iew Data Paths	7. Click OK. You can view the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected	
	storage policy or incremental storage policy. You can also modify the data paths including their priority from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select Storage Policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click Data Paths.	
onfigure a Subclient for	You can add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the subclient. These are batch files or shell	Refer to Pre/Post Processes.
re/Post Processing of Data Protection	scripts that you can run before or after certain job phases. 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>> Exchange	
	Compliance Archiver	
	2. Right-click the Subclient , and then click Properties .	
	3. Click the Pre/Post Process tab.	
	 Click one of the following phases and type the full path of the process that you want to execute during that phase. Alternatively, click Browse to locate the process (applicable only for paths that do not contain any spaces). Pre-Archive 	
	 Post-Archive Post-Archive 	
	5. Click OK .	
	6. Select Run Post archive Process for all attempts to run a post archive process for all	
	attempts.	
	 For subclients on Windows platforms, Run As displays Not Selected. If you want to change the account that has permission to run these commands, click 	
	Change.	
	 a. In the User Account dialog box, select Use Local System Account, or select Impersonate User and enter the user name and password. Click OK. 	
	b. If you selected Local System Account, click OK to the message advising you that commands using this account have rights to access all data on the client computer.	
Configure Activity Control	You can enable backup and restore operations from the agent and subclient level. However, you can enable restore operations only from the agent level.	Refer to Activity Control.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Activity Control , select or clear option(s) as desired.	
	4. Click OK .	
onfigure User Security	You can configure user security from the agent or subclient level.	Refer to User Administration
	You can perform the following functions:	and Security.
	 Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated. 	
	 Associate this object with a user group. 	
	 Disassociate this object from a user group. 	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
		1
	2. Click Properties.	

	4. Select the appropriate user groups to which you want to associate to the CommCell object from the Available Groups pane, and then move the user group to the Associated Groups pane.	
	5. Click OK .	
Enable/Disable Data Encryption	You can enable data encryption from the suclient level.Encryption must be enabled at the client level prior to configuring any instances residing on that client.	Refer to Data Encryption.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Encryption.	
	4. Select the desired encryption.	
	5. Click OK .	
View Software Version	The Version tab, at the Agent level displays the software version of the component.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the agent.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Version.	
	4. Click OK .	
CommCell Configuration Report	The CommCell Configuration Report provides the properties of the CommServe, MediaAgents, clients, agents, SRM agents, subclients, and storage policies within the CommCell based on the selected filter criteria.	Refer to CommCell Configuration.
	1. From the CommCell browser, click Reports icon.	
	2. Select CommCell Configuration.	
	3. Click Run.	

DELETING AN AGENT OR SUBCLIENT

The following sections describe the steps involved in deleting an agent or subclient.

When you delete an instance or archiveset, the associated data is logically deleted and you can no longer access the corresponding data from CommCell Console for recovery purposes.

Refer to the troubleshooting article on Recovering Data Associated with Deleted Clients and Storage Policies for information on how to recover data if you accidentally delete an entity.

DELETING AN AGENT

You need to uninstall or DeConfigure the agent software from the client computer before deleting from CommCell Browser. After you delete the client software, you can either leave the corresponding data intact for appropriate action or you can remove the data immediately. If you choose to remove the data immediately, you must delete the agent from the CommCell Browser. If you delete the agent, all of the agent's data is irretrievably lost.

- You cannot delete an agent while operations for that agent are running.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client>.
- 2. Right-click the **<**Agent**>**, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed with the following message:
 - This operation will permanently delete the data backed up from this level and it cannot be restored.
- 4. Click **OK** to continue with the deletion operation., or click **No** to abort the deletion.

DELETING A SUBCLIENT

Consider the following before deleting a subclient:

- You cannot delete a default subclient.
- Schedules associated with the subclient are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | <Exchange Compliance Archiver>
- 2. Right-click the *<subclient>* that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the subclient.

Click No to cancel the deletion and retain the subclient, or click Yes to continue the deletion.

Advanced Archive – Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Scheduling an Archive Job

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

SCHEDULING AN ARCHIVE JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <*Client*> | Exchange Compliance Archiver
 - Right-click the Subclient and click Archive

• Click Schedule

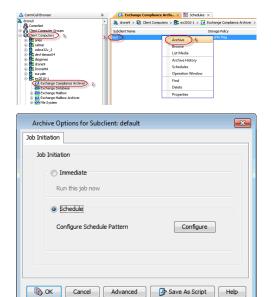
• Click Configure

RELATED TOPICS

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.



Schedule Details					×
Schedule Name					
One Time Daily Weekly Monthly	Start Time	9:00PM *			
) Yearly	On these days	 ✓ Monday ✓ Thursday ✓ Sunday 	♥ Tuesday Friday	Vednesday	
		ок	Cancel	Help Options	>>

3. Select Schedule Options. For example:

- Click Weekly
- Check the days you want the run the archive job
- Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
- Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog box
- Click **OK** to close the Archive Options dialog box

The archive job will execute as per the schedule

MANAGING JOBS

The following sections provide information on the various options available for job management.

RESTARTING JOBS

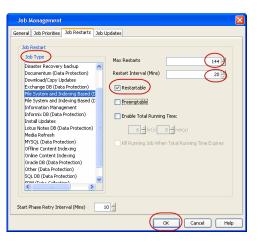
Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- Click Job Restarts tab and select a Job Type.
 Select Restartable to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for Max Restarts to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click **OK.**



Enable Total Running Time

Enable Number Of Patrier

Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help

Job Init

(i) I

 $1\frac{x}{x}$ hr(s) $0\frac{x}{x}$ min(s)

0 2

OK Cancel Help

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to <*Client*> | Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient** and select **Archive**.
- 3. Click Advanced.
- 4. In the Advanced Archive Options dialog box, click the Job Retry tab.
- 5. Select **Enable Total Running Time** and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed.

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

- 6. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.
- 7. Click **OK**.

CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.	
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.	
KILL	Terminates a job.	

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your archive operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps for configuring them.

Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.



OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Create New Index	The Create New Index option generates an index of the data whenever an archive operation is run. During the restore process, the index is used for quick access to the appropriate archive file.	Refer to Index.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data.	
	5. Select the Create new index check box.	
atalog	 6. Click OK. Use the Catalog options to select index cache sharing and granular restartability options for the job. Note that these options are not applicable for the disaster recovery data protection. 	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data and choose one of the following:	
	 Use shared profile if present with transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the job's index cache for index cache sharing with transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. 	
	 Use shared profile if present without transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the index cache for index cache sharing <i>without</i> transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. This is not a recommended configuration. 	
	 Use transaction logging to use transaction logging feature to provide granular job restartability (without using shared profile for index cache sharing). 	
	 None to use neither shared profile nor transaction logging. 	
	5. Click OK .	
Startup Options	The Job Manager will use the startup priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.	Refer to Job Priority and Priority Precedence.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set .	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced .	
	4. Select Startup .	
	 Select Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). 	
	6. Select Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job Controller in a suspended state.	
	7. Click OK .	
ob Retry Options	The Job Retry option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum number of restart attempts.	Refer to Job Management.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set .	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Job Retry.	
	5. Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and minutes.	
	6. Select Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the Job Manager attempts to restart the job.	
	7. Select Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed when the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time.	
	8. Click OK .	
Start New Media	The Start New Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media.	Refer to Start New Media.
	This media management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically	

Backup2. Right-clid3. From the4. Select M5. Select St6. Click OKMark Media FullThe Mark Medicompletion of media.1. From the8 Backup2. Right-clid3. From the4. Select M5. Select M6. Click OKAllow Other Schedules ToUse Media Set7 The Allow Other Schedules To9 Click OKAllow Other Schedules To9 Click OK9 Click OK <th>Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. Int New Media. a Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. At the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. err Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.</client></th> <th>fer to Export Media.</th>	Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. Int New Media. a Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. At the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. err Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.</client>	fer to Export Media.
 From the Select M Select St Click OK Mark Media Full The Mark Media of Media. From the Backup Right-clic From the Select M Click OK Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set The Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set Select M Sele	Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. art New Media. a Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. er Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.</client>	fer to Export Media.
4. Select M 5. Select St 6. Click OK Mark Media Full The Mark Media of media. 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select M 5. Select M 6. Click OK Allow Other Schedules To Jse Media Set The Allow Oth 5. Select M 6. Click OK 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select M 5. Select M 6. Click OK 7. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select M 6. Click OK 7. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select M 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options 0. When you purposes. • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	dia. Int New Media. Art New Media. A Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful he archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Set. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. Fr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents for example.</client>	fer to Export Media.
5. Select St 6. Click OK Iark Media Full Iark Media Full Iark Media Full Iark Media Full Iark Media Full Iark Media Full Iark Media Full I From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Mi 6. Click OK The Allow Other Schedules To Ise Media Set I From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK Xtend Job Retention I From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK Xtend Job Retention I From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 4. Select Mi 5. Select and 4. Select Mi 5. Select and 5.	art New Media. Reference a Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same Reference CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent idet. idet. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent idet. idet. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. rs Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.</client></client>	fer to Export Media.
6. Click OKlark Media FullThe Mark Medicompletion of media.1. From the Backup2. Right-clic3. From the4. Select Mile5. Select Mile6. Click OKIllow Other Schedules ToIse Media SetIllow Other Schedules ToSee Media SetIn From theBackup2. Right-clic3. From the4. Select Mile5. Select All6. Click OKxtend Job RetentionThis option allretention periorstorage policy1. From theBackup2. Right-clic3. From the4. Select Mile5. Select and6. Click OK2. Right-clic3. From the4. Select Mile5. Select and6. Click OK5. Select and6. Click OK6. Click OK6. Click OK7. From the	a Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. (c the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. er Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.</client>	fer to Export Media.
Iark Media Full The Mark Media for media. 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mide 4. Select Mide 5. Select Mide 5. Select Mide 6. Click OK More of the Schedules Tore The Allow Other Schedules Tore Jse Media Set The Allow Other Schedules Tore Jse Media Set The Allow Other Schedule police 2. Right-clice 3. From the 4. Select Mide 5. Select All 5. Select All 6. Click OK 6. Click OK 7. From the 9. Select Mide 7. Select Mide 5. Select All 6. Click OK 9. Select Mide 7. Select Mide 9. Select Mide <td>the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. It the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. It Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.</client></td> <td>fer to Export Media.</td>	the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. It the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. It Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.</client>	fer to Export Media.
completion of media. 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Mi 6. Click OK Mow Other Schedules To Ise Media Set Media Set Men you Men you	the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. It the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. It Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.</client>	fer to Export Media.
Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Mi 6. Click OK Mow Other Schedules To Jse Media Set The Allow Other Jobs from 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select All 6. Click OK 7. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select All 6. Click OK 7. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select All 6. Click OK 7. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Mi 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfiautomatically The following path: • When the pi • When you 1. From	Set. Archive Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. rr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents in writing to the same set of media.	
3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select M 6. Click OK 110w Other Schedules To Ise Media Set 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 7. From the 8. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 7. From the 8. Select M 7. Select	Archive Options window, click Advanced. dia. rk Media Full on Success. rr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.	
4. Select M 5. Select M 6. Click OK 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK Xtend Job Retention Xtend Job Retention 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK Xtend Job Retention 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. OK 6. OK 7. Select Al 7. Se	dia. rk Media Full on Success. rr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.	
5. Select Miles Ilow Other Schedules To se Media Set Ilow Other Schedules To se Media Set The Allow Oth schedule polic other jobs from 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the 4. Select Mile 5. Select All 6. Click OK xtend Job Retention This option all retention periorstorage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clid 3. From the 4. Select Mile 5. Select and 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perforation When the properties When the properties When you When you Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perforation When you When you When you </td <td>rk Media Full on Success. rr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.</td> <td></td>	rk Media Full on Success. rr Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents n writing to the same set of media.	
6. Click OK Illow Other Schedules To Ise Media Set 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK xtend Job Retention xtend Job Retention 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK xtend Job Retention 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 6. Click OK 6. When you 7. From the 7. Select Al 6. When you 7. From the 7. Select Al 7. S	er Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or Re r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents for writing to the same set of media.	
Illow Other Schedules To The Allow Oth Ise Media Set The Allow Oth Ise Media Set other jobs from 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK This option all xtend Job Retention This option all retention perivisorage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select ar G. Click OK 5. Select ar G. Click OK 5. Select ar G. Click OK 5. Select ar Select Mi 5. Select ar G. Click OK 5. Select ar Select Mi 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfnautomatically The following path: • When the polypurposes. When you • When you 1. From the	r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents a writing to the same set of media.	
Illow Other Schedules To The Allow Oth Ise Media Set This chedule polic Other jobs from 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select All 6. Click OK xtend Job Retention This option all retention peri- retention peri- Storage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an 0. Click OK 3. F	r and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents a writing to the same set of media.	
Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select Al 6. Click OK This option all retention periorstorage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfautomatically The following path: • When the p • When you 1. From the Backup		fer to Creating an portable Media Set.
3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 7. This option all retention peri- storage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perf- automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet.</client>	
4. Select M 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 7. This option all retention period storage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clice 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perfor automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	the Subclient and click Archive.	
5. Select Al 6. Click OK 5. Select Al 6. Click OK This option all retention peri- storage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfor automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
6. Click OK xtend Job Retention This option all retention period storage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select an days/St 6. Click OK Pata Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perf- automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	dia.	
xtend Job Retention This option all retention periods storage policy 1. From the Backup 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mi 5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Data Pottectic Drive) to perfor automatically The following path: • When the performance • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup • This option set of the performance	ow Other Schedules To Use Media Set.	
retention periestorage policy 1. From the Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfe automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup		
Backup 2. Right-clic 3. From the 4. Select Mile 5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perfautomatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	ws you to extend the retention end time of the selected job. You can extend the d to infinite period or for a specified number of days. You can also extend to default period.	
3. From the 4. Select M 5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perfu- automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Set.</client>	
4. Select Ma 5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perfor automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	the Subclient and click Archive.	
5. Select ar days/St 6. Click OK Data Protectic Drive) to perfu automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
days/St 6. Click OK Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to perfu automatically The following path: • When the p • When you purposes. • When you 1. From the Backup	dia.	
 Data Path Options Data Protectic Drive) to performant of the path of the pat	of the following Extend Job Retention period options: Infinite/Number of prage Policy default.	
 Drive) to perform automatically The following path: When the performance of the performanc		
 When the p When you purposes. When you 1. From the Backup 	n operations use a specific data path (Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Re rm the archive operations as configured in the CommCell. By default, the system dentifies the data path for the archive operations. re some of the important situations where you may need to change the data	fer Change Data Path.
 When you 1. From the Backup 	referred MediaAgent, library or drive pool is not available during the archive. eed to use a different MediaAgent, library or drive pool for load balancing	
1. From the Backup		
	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent 	
3. From the	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent iet.	
	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent iet. k the Subclient and click Archive.	
	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent Set. In the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent set. (the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. ta Path.	
	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. k the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. ta Path. MediaAgent and Library.</client>	
7. Click OK Vault Tracker The VaultTrac	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. (the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. ta Path.</client>	
and stored in your day-to-d Identifies n	eed to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent iet. k the Subclient and click Archive. Archive Options window, click Advanced. ta Path. MediaAgent and Library.</client>	fer to VaultTracker or

Alerts	 locations. Automatically moves the media in sequence in the library and provides a pick-up list for the operators. Identifies and tracks the media during transit. Records and tracks the movement of media not used by all MediaAgents or Foreign Media. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> Right-click the Subclient and click Archive. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Select VaultTracking. Select the necessary options. Click OK. 	Refer to Alerts.
	 such as failure, success, or any other conditions triggered by the archive job. Adding alerts helps the user or the user group to get the notification automatically about the status of the archive job. 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive. 	
	 From the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Select Alert. 	
	5. Click Add Alert.	
	 From the Add Alert Wizard window, select the Threshold and Notification Criteria. Click Next. 	
	7. Select the Notification Types. Click Next.	
	8. Select the Users and User Groups. Click Next.	
	9. Verify the Summary .	
	10. Click Finish .	
	11. Click OK .	
Command Line Backups	Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into your own scripts or scheduling programs. In addition, you can also generate scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Console using the Save As Script option. These scripts can later be executed using the command line interface.	Refer to Command Line Interface.
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information about the condition of your CommCell.	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report	The Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report provides the details of all the archive jobs of clients.	Refer to Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report.
Calendar Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report	The Calendar Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report provides the total amount of archive jobs run (along with their job status) for a specified time period.	Refer to Calendar Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report.

Advanced Recover - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Retrieving Messages to a Target Mailbox

Retrieving Messages to a PST file

Finding and Retrieving

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Restoring a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Retrieval

Retrieving to a Different Exchange Server Version

Scheduling a Retrieval

Restoring By Jobs

Managing Retrieval Jobs Restarting Jobs

Controlling Jobs

Additional Restore Options

RETRIEVING MESSAGES TO A TARGET MAILBOX

You can browse and retrieve archived mail messages to a target mailbox. Exchange Compliance Archiver will create a new folder in the target mailbox, annotate and time-stamp it with the retrieval job reference and proceed to deposit all the contents of the retrieval within this new folder. Ensure that the storage limits are disabled before retrieving mail messages.

Follow the steps given below to browse and retrieve archived mail messages to a target mailbox:

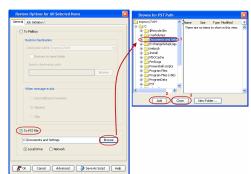
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Navigate to the required folder in the left pane.
- 5. Select a message item from the right pane.
- 6. Click Recover All Selected.
- 7. Select the target mailbox to which the message will be restored.
- 8. Click OK.

RETRIEVING MESSAGES TO A PST FILE

Follow the steps given below to browse and retrieve archived mail messages to a PST file:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |*Client*>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select a message from a mailbox in the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click To PST File.
- 6. Click Browse and select the a folder on the client computer to save the PST file.

You can also save the PST in a network location. Click **Network** and browse to select a folder on any other client in the domain.



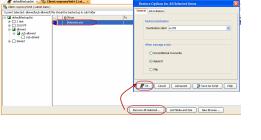
RELATED TOPICS

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.



7. Click **OK**.

FINDING AND RETRIEVING

Use Find to search and locate messages from an archived mailbox. Find is available from a subclient, or by right-clicking a mailbox or message from a Browse and Recover operation.

When entering criteria, note that up to 24 characters are supported for Sender and Recipient entries. Similarly, up to 42 characters are supported for Subject entries.

FINDING A MESSAGE WITH A SPECIFIC SUBJECT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- Type the **Subject** name of the message to narrow the search by a specific subject line containing the specified text string or wildcard pattern. You can search for partial words without the need for wildcard characters at the beginning and/or end of the search string.

These wildcards, or a combination of these wildcards, are supported in the **Subject** field:

- o * for any number of characters e.g., Accounting*.
- 0 ? for any one character e.g., user_group?.
- O [] for a range of characters e.g., [a-k] Lee.
- O [!] for a negation of a range of characters e.g., [!a-k] Lee.

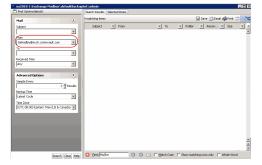
4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE FROM A SPECIFIC USER

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. In **From**, narrow the search by entering a specified user who sent the message.
- 4. Click Search.

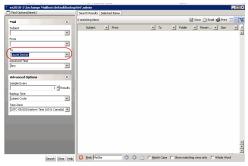
The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



FINDING A MESSAGE SENT TO A SPECIFIC USER

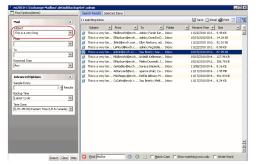
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. In **To**, narrow the search by entering a specified user the message was addressed to. When searching Public Folder data using this field, keep in mind that only e-mails posted to mail-enabled Public Folders will be searchable. If you wish to search posts made to a Public Folder, use the **Subject** or **From** fields instead.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



FINDING A MESSAGE RECEIVED IN A SPECIFIC TIME RANGE

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.



- 2. Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Find**.
- 3. In Received Time, select an entry from the drop-down list to narrow the search to messages received on the specified date or within the specified date range according to date criteria (Any, Today, Yesterday, This Week, This Month, This Year, Is, After, Before, Between, Specific Date). Depending on your selection, additional date range fields may appear below the Received Time field.
- 4. Click Search.
- The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

QUICK SEARCH USING SAMPLING

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In Sample Every, specify the rate at which messages are sampled to determine whether they match the search criteria. The default value of 1 indicates that every message will be sampled. Keep in mind that the order in which messages are sampled is based on the order in which the messages were backed up.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE BACKED UP AT A SPECIFIC TIME

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Find**.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In Backup Time, specify a time or time range (Latest Cycle, After, Before, Between, Specific Date, Any, Today, Yesterday, This week, This Month, This Year, or Relative) to narrow searches to messages that were backed up within the time period specified.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

ADDING SEARCH RESULTS TO A LIST

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Find**.
- 3. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the previous sections.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

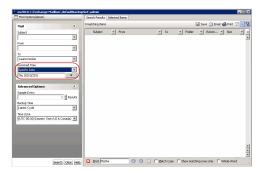
Right-click a message and select Add to Selected List.

5. Click the **Selected Items** tab and the message will be displayed.

Moving items to the Selected List lets you control the items you need to restore. You could narrow down the list from the Search Results so that you are able to recover only the items from the Selected List.

USING FIND FROM A BROWSE WINDOW

When you access Find as part of a Browse operation, keep in mind that the time range values are not pre-populated by any previously selected time range settings entered on the Browse Options or Advanced Browse Options dialog.

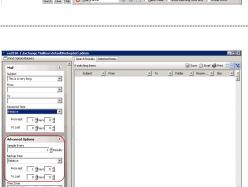


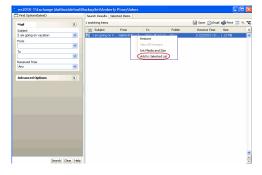
¥

.

*

unta) 💌





- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Find**.
- 4. Right-click a mailbox or mailbox item (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) and select **Find**.
- 5. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the next few sections.
- 6. Click Search.

The search results are displayed in the right pane. You can optionally save the results, email, or print them.

RESTORING A MESSAGE OR A MAILBOX ITEM FROM THE SEARCH RESULTS

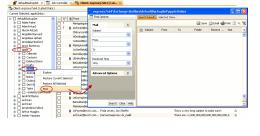
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria and click **Search**.
- Right-click a message or a mailbox item from the search results and then select Restore.
- 5. Click **To Mailbox**.
- 6. In the **Destination Client** list, select the name of client computer.

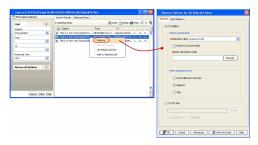
In cases where the mailbox alias name has changed, it is strongly recommended to recover archived messages out-ofplace to the current mailbox alias name. Otherwise, attempting to recover the data in-place to a mailbox alias that no longer exists will cause the recover operation to fail.

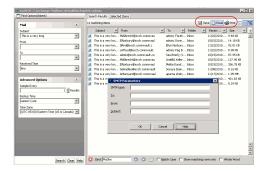
7. Click OK.

SAVE, EMAIL, OR PRINT SEARCH RESULTS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 1. Enter search criteria and click Search.
- 2. Click Save, Email, or Print in the upper-right corner of the window.
- 3. If Email is selected, enter the SMTP parameters (SMTP Host, To, From, Subject).







PERFORMING AN OUT-OF-PLACE RETRIEVAL

By default, the Exchange Compliance Archiver iDataAgent recovers data to the client computer from which it originated; this is referred to as an in-place retrieval. You can also recover the archived data to another client computer.

When you perform an out-of-place recovery, the recovered data assumes the rights (i.e., permissions) of the parent directory.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select an archived folder, a message, or an archived folder item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Exchange Compliance Archiver *i*DataAgent installed on it.
- 6. Click OK.

Restore Options for All Selected Items
General Job Initiation
Restore Destination
Destination client exproxy7x64
When message exists
O Unconditional Overwrite
 Append
🔿 Skip
🖉 OK Cancel Advanced 😰 Save As Script Help

RETRIEVING TO A DIFFERENT EXCHANGE SERVER VERSION

When performing a cross-application retrieval of Archived folders from a newer version of Exchange Server to an older version, it follows the same compatibility support provided by the Exchange Server, unless otherwise noted.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |*Client*>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select an archived folder, a message, or an archived folder item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Exchange Compliance Archiver *i*DataAgent installed on it.
- 6. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

Resto	ore Options for All Selected Items	×
General	Job Initiation	_
R	Restore Destination	
	Destination client exproxy7x64	
		1
CV	When message exists	
	O Unconditional Overwrite	
	• Append	
	🔿 Skip	
e c	Cancel Advanced 🕑 Save As Script Help	

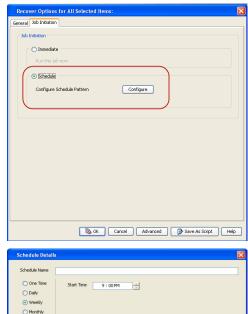
SCHEDULING A RETRIEVAL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Compliance Archiver.
 - Right-click the **subclient**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
 - Click OK.

2.

Browse Options	
Browse the Latest Data	
Specify Browse Time	
Browse Data Before:	
Tue 02/01/2011 🛛 🗸 03 : 16 AM	
Time Zone: (GMT+05:30) Chennai, Kolkata, Mumbai, N 🕑	
Client Computer: doclocalvm	~
Use MediaAgent 	~
Show Deleted Items	
Page Size: 1000 x	
OK Cancel Advanced List Media	Help
∰ghere extitet (Laar Mat) Gaart lahet akstübul)d= Intestaansenste 6.0.99	9DØ
Control 2	Size x 0.4142 x 1.4346 x 0.7540 x 002.3440 x
Image: Contract	9.7148 06.58+0 7.848 1.45.98 10.3348 909.7149
Construction C	2.0748 22.0748 925.0748 9.5148 9.5148 9.5148
gacover #8 Selected	

- Select one or more archived folders in the left pane. The archived folder items (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) will be selected in the right pane.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- **3.** Click **Job Initiation** tab and click **Schedule**.
 - Click Configure.



- 4. Select the appropriate scheduling options. For example:
 - Click Weekly.
 - Check the days you want the run the restore job.
 - Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
 - Click OK to close the Schedule Details dialog
 - Click **OK** to close the Restore Options dialog

The restore job will execute as per the schedule.

Schedule Detail	s			
Schedule Name				
One Time Daily Weekly Monthly	Start Time	9:00 PM	1	
🔿 Yearly	On these days	 ✓ Monday ✓ Thursday ✓ Sunday 	Tuesday	Vednesday

RESTORING BY JOBS

The Restore By Jobs feature provides the facility to select a specific backup job to be restored. This method of restoring data is considerably faster as it reads continuously on the tape and retrieves the data and does not depend on the indexing subsystem to get the seek offsets on the media.

This feature can be used in different scenarios such as the following:

- To restore point-in-time data associated with a specific backup job, such as full, incremental, differential, etc.
- To restore CommServe DR data for the disaster recovery or for creating a hot-site purposes.
- To restore multiplexed data from the same client.

Consider the following when restoring by jobs:

- Run a restore by jobs whenever you want to restore the entire contents of the job.
- Avoid running restores by jobs for jobs associated with the default subclient. If you do this, the entire contents of the machine will be restored. As such, this may cause problems (e.g., the machine might run out of space) or produce undesirable results (e.g., you might end up restoring operating system files or directories that you really do not want to restore).
- Avoid modifying the contents of any associated subclients since this may result in the retrieval of older data.

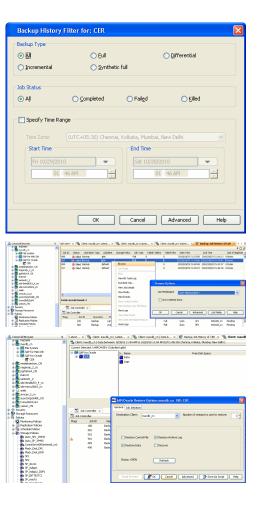
Use the following steps to restore data by jobs.

1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the level whose data you want to browse, click View and then click the Backup History.

Canacel Invest		•			sviðsjón (Latest x) 🎭 Clenit saviðsjón (Cala b x	0 D d
S Stando or		- 61	A hitehit_cn > 10 Clert Corps	ters > 👫 mendojon > 👬 SIP for Grade > 🕂 CE	R >	40.0
30 Co File 59		- 11	Subclient Name	Storage Policy	Description	1
2 54P h		- 11	🐱 def aut	SP1		-
	All Tasks >	- 11	🗃 gh	91		
a R room	Vare B	24	schup History			
a grant	Properties		estore Halory Inedules			
 Set tends Set and set set of Set and set of 	190,4,01 5862,01 5868,01 2648,01 254		D Control D Summery			

From the **Backup History Filter** window, select the filter options, if any, that you 2. want to apply and click $\ensuremath{\textbf{OK}}$.

- 3. From the Backup Job History window, right-click the backup job that need to be restored and select **Browse**.
- 4. From the **Browse Options** dialog box, click **OK** to execute the browse using the **Browse the Latest Data** option.
- From the **Browse** window, select the instance node in the left pane and then select the required data and logs in the right pane, and click the **Recover All Selected** button at the bottom of the window.
- 6. Select the desired restore options and click **OK**.



MANAGING RETRIEVAL JOBS

Once you initiate the retrieval operation, a retrieval job is generated in the Job Controller. Jobs can be managed in a number of ways. The following sections provide information on the different job management options available:

RESTARTING JOBS

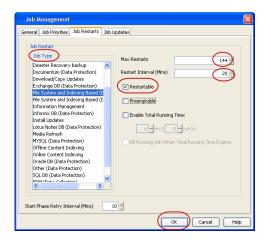
Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click **Job Restarts** tab and select a **Job Type.**
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for **Max Restarts** to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click OK.



CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Compliance Archiver | <ArchiveSet>.
- 2. Right-click the *Subclient* in the right pane and then click **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select the data that you want to restore and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. Click Advanced and select the Job Retry tab
- Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

7. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.

8. Click OK.

CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.		
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.		
KILL	Terminates a job.		

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

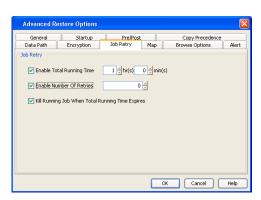
- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL RESTORE OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your retrieval operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps to implement them.



Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

Data Aging - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

Data Aging is the process of removing old data from secondary storage to allow the associated media to be reused for future backups.

By default, all backup data is retained infinitely. However, you should change the retention of your data based on your needs. Note that if you continue to have infinite retention, you will also need infinite storage capacity.

5 関

O Retain Por

🚡 Storage Poli

.. Disast... 1 .. Stand... 1 . Stand... 1 Stand... , Stand..

Content 🛐 Summar idol admin

ena C... ena C... ena L.... ena N... ena te...

яПа ×

Auto..

🔠 test-data-aging 🛛

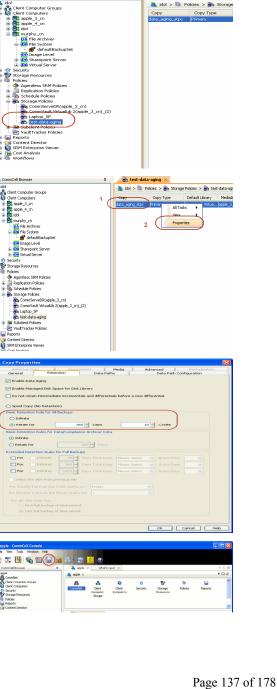
1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies | Storage Policies.

2. Highlight the Storage Policy.

з. From the right pane, right-click the Storage Policy Copy and click the Properties.

- 4. • Click the **Retention** tab.
 - Click the Retain For in the Basic Retention Rules for All Backups area.
 - Enter number of days to retain the data.
 - Enter number of cycles to retain the data.
 - Click OK.

5. From the CommCell Browser, click the **Reports** icon.



6. Expand Reports and select Data Retention Forecast and Compliance.

7. Click Run.

8. The report will display the data to be pruned when a data aging job is run.

To ensure only data intended for aging is actually aged, it is important to identify the data that will be aged based on the retention rules you have configured. Hence, ensure this report includes only the data you intend to age.

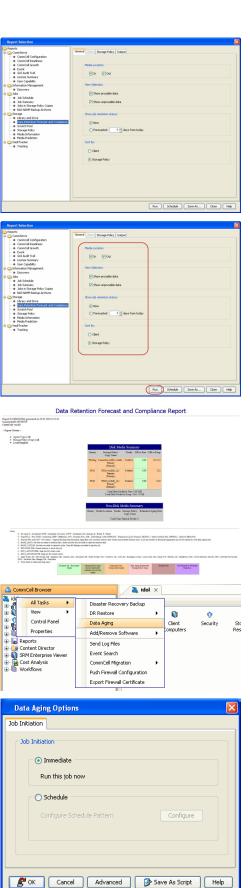
If necessary, fine-tune your rules so that only the intended data is aged.

Once you run a data aging job, the data will be lost.

- 9. From the CommCell Console, right click the CommServe icon and click All Tasks | Data Aging.
- 10. Select Immediate in the Job Initiation section and click OK.

 You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller window. When the job has completed, the Job Controller displays Completed.





Make sure that the job completes successfully. If the job did not complete successfully, re-run the job.

ADVANCED TOPICS

Data Aging - Advanced

Provides comprehensive information on additional Data Aging capabilities.

Additional Operations - Exchange Compliance Archiver

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Audit Trail Auxiliary Copy Global Filters License Administration Online Help Links Operating System and Application Upgrades Operation Window Schedule Policy Storage Policy Uninstalling Components

AUDIT TRAIL

The Audit Trail feature allows you to track the operations of users who have access to the CommCell. This capability is useful if a detrimental operation was performed in the CommCell and the source of that operation needs to be determined.

Audit Trail tracks operations according to four severity levels:

- Critical: This level records operations that will result in imminent loss of data.
- High: This level records operations that may result in loss of data.
- Medium: This level records changes to the general configuration of one or more entities. Such changes may produce unintended results when operations
 are performed.
- Low: This level records changes to status, addition of entities, and other operations that have minimal impact on existing CommCell functions.

To set Audit Trail retention periods:

- 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Control Panel, and then select Audit Trail.
- 2. From the Audit Trail dialog box, select the desired retention time (in days) for each severity level.
- 3. Click **OK**.

AUXILIARY COPY

An auxiliary copy operation allows you to create secondary copies of data associated with data protection operations, independent of the original copy.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click storage policy for which you want to perform an auxiliary copy, click All Tasks, and then click Run Auxiliary Copy.
- 2. If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the CommServe level, select the storage policy for which you wish to perform the auxiliary copy.

If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the Storage Policy level, the Storage Policy field is already populated with the name of the Storage Policy you selected.

- 3. If the source copy is configured with a shared library, select the **Source MediaAgent** for the auxiliary copy.
- 4. Click **OK** to start the auxiliary copy operation. A progress bar displays the progress of the operation.

GLOBAL FILTERS

Global Filters are exclusions that filter data from backups across all Agents in a CommCell that support the feature. Global Filters serve as a template for files, folders, and entities that should always be excluded from all (or most) backups in a CommCell, such as temporary data a computer does not retain or data that is recoverable by means other than a restore. This saves space on media and enhances backup performance.

By default, filters configured for a particular subclient override any Global Filters configured for the CommCell. You can, however, configure subclients to include global filters along with any filters already configured for the subclient.

CONFIGURE GLOBAL FILTERS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe, click Control Panel, and then click Global Filters.
- 2. Select Use Global Filters on All Subclients.
- 3. Click Browse to locate the files or folders to be excluded from backups and click OK.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

ENABLE/DISABLE GLOBAL FILTERS FOR A SUBCLIENT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient for which you want to enable Global Filters and click Properties.
- 2. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 3. Select one of the following values from the Include Global Filters list:
 - $\circ~$ ON to enable Global Filters for this subclient.
 - $\circ~$ OFF to disable Global Filters for this subclient.
- 4. Click **OK**.

LICENSE ADMINISTRATION

REQUIRED LICENSES

The Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent requires the Exchange Compliance Archiver license.

CONVERTING EVALUATION LICENSES TO PERMANENT LICENSES

If you installed the software using an Evaluation License, you can upgrade to a Permanent License as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe icon, click Control Panel, and then click License Administration.
- 2. Select the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Update License}}$ tab and then click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Convert}}.$
- 3. Check the box that corresponds to the evaluation license you would like to upgrade and then click **Convert**.

The license information is updated in the License Administration window.

USING CAPACITY-BASED LICENSING

License Usage by Capacity is a licensing mechanism that allows you to obtain licenses based on the amount of data you back up. It provides the following features:

- Flexibility of usage on all agents, rather than being tied to number of server, agents, etc.
- Allows you to purchase licenses based on your data protection needs

Both Core and Enterprise license types are available. Refer to License Usage by Capacity for comprehensive information on utilizing this method.

RELEASING A LICENSE

If you no longer require a license on a computer, such as cases where the computer is being retired, you can release the license and use it later for another computer. Backup data from the retired computer can still be restored after the license is released provided the data is not aged.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the name of the client from which you want to release a license, click **All Tasks**, and then click **Release License** for **Client**.
- 2. Click ${\bf OK}$ to continue releasing the license
- 3. Click Yes to confirm you want to release the license or No to abort.

ONLINE HELP LINKS

Use the following links to view the online help for the corresponding tabs in the CommCell Console:

ENTITY	ONLINE HELP LINKS	SUB LINKS
Agent	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (General)	Change User Account
	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Version)	
	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Security)	
	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Activity Control)	
	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (AD Server)	
	Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Storage Device)	
Subclient	Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (General)	Add/Modify Mailbox
	Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Content)	User Account (Pre/Post)
	Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (Filters)	Data Paths for < <i>Storage Policy Name</i> >
	Agent	Agent Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (General) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Version) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Security) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Activity Control) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (AD Server) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (AD Server) Exchange Compliance Archiver Properties (Storage Device) Subclient Subclient Properties of: <subclient name=""> (General) Subclient Properties of: <subclient name=""> (Content)</subclient></subclient>

	I		1
		Subclient Properties of: <i><subclient name=""></subclient></i> (Pre/Post Process)	Configure AD User Group for Auto- discovery
		Subclient Properties of: <i><subclient name=""></subclient></i> (Storage Device)	Authenticate Active Directory Domain
		Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (Auto-discovery)	Controller
		Subclient Properties of: <i><subclient name=""></subclient></i> (Activity Control)	Change Mailbox Stores for Auto-
		Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (Encryption)	discovery
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Security)	
ARCHIVE	Archive Options	Archive Options for Subclient: <subclient name=""></subclient>	Save As Script
ARCHIVE			Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Archive	Advanced Archive Options (Data)	Alert Wizard
	Options	Advanced Archive Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Job Retry)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Media)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Archive Options (VaultTracking)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Alert)	
RECOVER	Recover Options	Recover Options for All Selected Items (General)	Save As Script
RECOVER		Recover Options for All Selected Items (Job Initiation)	Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Recover	Advanced Recover Options (General)	Alert Wizard
	Options	Advanced Recover Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Copy Precedence)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Encryption)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Selected Path/Filters)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Browse Options)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Alert)	

OPERATING SYSTEM AND APPLICATION UPGRADES

Operating system upgrades are only supported when upgrading from one version of an OS to a different version of the same OS (e.g., Win2003 to Win2008). The two methods of upgrading are:

- Seamless Upgrade This involves uninstalling the Agent software, upgrading the operating system, and then re-installing the Agent software.
- Full OS Replacement This involves performing a clean install of a new version of the OS, re-installing any application software, then re-installing the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Agent software.

For Full OS Replacement, the client computer must be configured to have the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Client software re-installed to the same location, the same Fully Qualified Domain Name or short domain name, the same partitions, disk drive format (FAT, NTFS, et. al.), and IP configuration as previously.

If it is necessary to remove Agent software to facilitate an operating system or application upgrade, do not delete the icon for the Agent from the CommCell Console, or all associated backed up data will be lost.

Use the following strategy to upgrade the operating system software:

- Identify the computers you want to upgrade and the CommCell components installed on each of these computers.
- Choose the type of upgrade procedure you want to use on each computer: seamless or full replacement.
- CommServe, MediaAgent, and Client computers can be upgraded in any order.

OPERATION WINDOW

By default, all operations in the CommCell can run for 24 hours. To prevent certain operations from running during certain periods of the day, you can define operation rules so that these operations are disabled during those times.

When operation rules are configured, operations that are started within the time window specified will go to a queued (as opposed to pending) state. Once the time window specified in the operation rule has elapsed, these queued or running operations will resume automatically.

- 1. In the CommCell Browser, right-click the appropriate entity, click All Tasks, and then click Operation Window.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. From the **Operation Window** dialog box:
 - Enter the name of the rule in the Name field.

• Select either an administration, data protection (either full or non-full), and/or a data recovery operation from the **Operations** pane.

4. Click **OK**.

SCHEDULE POLICY

A schedule policy is a defined schedule or group of schedules for specific operations to be performed on associated objects within the CommCell. When the schedules from a policy are run, the specified operations, (e.g., auxiliary copy, backup, etc.,) will be performed on the associated CommCell objects.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Schedule Policies and click Add.
- 2. Type the **Name** of the schedule policy.
- 3. Select the Type of schedule policy.
- 4. Select the Agent Type.
- 5. Type a description of the schedule policy.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Enter a Schedule Name in the Schedule Pattern tab.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. On the Associations tab, select the objects to be associated with the schedule policy.
- 10. Click OK.

STORAGE POLICY

A Storage policy defines the data lifecycle management rules for protected data. Storage policies map data from its original location to a physical storage media and determine its retention period.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Storage Policies, and select New Storage Policy.
- 2. Click Next.
- 3. Select Data Protection and Archiving to create a regular storage policy or CommServe Disaster Recovery Backup to backup the CommServe database and click Next.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Enter the name of storage policy and click Next.
- 6. Enter the name of the primary copy and click Next.
- 7. From the drop down box, select the default library for the primary copy and click Next.
- 8. From the drop down box, select the MediaAgent and click Next.
- 9. Enter number of data streams and set the retention period for the policy and click Next.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Click Browse, browse to your designated deduplication store location and click Next.
- 12. Confirm your selections and click **Finish**.

UNINSTALLING COMPONENTS

You can uninstall the components using one of the following method:

Method 1: Uninstall Components Using the CommCell Console

Method 2: Uninstall Components from Add or Remove Programs

METHOD 1: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS USING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the desired Client Computer and click All Tasks -> Add/Remove Programs and click Uninstall Software.
- 2. Uninstall Software Options dialog will appear.
- 3. In the Uninstall Software tab, select Uninstall All to uninstall all the software packages.
- 4. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer.

METHOD 2: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS FROM ADD OR REMOVE PROGRAMS

- 1. Click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.

For Windows Vista/Windows 2008, click Uninstall a Program in the Control Panel.

- 3. Click **Remove** to uninstall the components in the following sequence:
 - 1. <Agent>
 - 2. File System iDataAgent
 - 3. Base Software

ADVANCED TOPICS

Provides comprehensive information about additional capabilities for the following features:

- Audit Trail
- Auxiliary Copy
- Erase Backup DataGlobal Filters
- License Administration
- License Usage by Capacity
- Operating System and Application Upgrades
- Operation Window
- Schedule Policy
- Storage Policies
- Uninstalling Components

Back to Top

Troubleshooting - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Filtering Data that Consistently Fails Backup Process Hangs in a Pending State Multiple Jobs are Failing with Profile Errors Automatic Profile Creation is Failing Unable to Log on to Microsoft Information Store/Profile Creation is Failing Process Hangs While Enabling/Disabling MAPI Error During the Installation of MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003 Microsoft MAPI Version Error Error Message: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011d) Error Message: extask.cpp:HrInitialize(1342) Initializing MAPI Subsystem Error Message: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR Error Message: Cannot Open Folder for Mailbox "username" Error:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010f) Error Message: Could Not Open the Exchange Private Message Store with Profile ExchAdm (E_FAIL (0x80004005)) Error Message: ERROR CODE [28:153]

FILTER DATA THAT CONSISTENTLY FAILS

PROBLEM

Some items such as files or folders e.t.c., fail because they are locked by the operating system or application and cannot be opened at the time of the data protection operation. This items will be displayed in the "Items That Failed" list when Job History Report is run.

SOLUTION

Filter the files that consistently appear in the "Items That Failed" list on the data protection Job History Report and exclude those files or folders during backup to avoid backup failure.

BACKUP PROCESS HANGS IN A PENDING STATE

PROBLEM

The backup processes may hang up in pending state because of incorrect permissions set at the service account level.

SOLUTION

To fix service account permission issues ensure the following:

- Service account is the local administrator on the client where the backups are run.
- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group for Exchange 2007 or Organization management group for Exchange 2010.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010:

- 1. Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- 2. Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- 3. Ensure that Organization Management group does not have "Receive As" or "Send As" access set to Deny.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010 server:

- 1. On the Exchange 2010 server, open the command prompt.
- 2. Type get-mailboxDatabase | add-adpermission -user <service account> -ExtendedRights Receive-As.

MULTIPLE JOBS ARE FAILING WITH PROFILE ERRORS

PROBLEM

Multiple jobs will fail with profile errors when there is one profile for more than one job.

SOLUTION

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.
- 8. Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- 9. Click OK.
- 10. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <Client> | Exchange Mailbox |defaultBackupSet.
- 11. Right click the subclient and click **Backup**.
- 12. Select **Full** as backup type and **Immediate** to run the job immediately.
- 13. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.

AUTOMATIC PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

Automatic profile creation process is failing as the service account name is not unique and have similar starting series.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to make the service account name unique for the process of auto discovery. It should not have similar starting series as any other account. Follow the steps given below to verify this manually:

- 1. Use Manual Profile Creation to create a new profile.
- 2. Enter the service account name and click Check Name.
- 3. If many names are displayed, it is recommended to change the service account name.

UNABLE TO LOG ON TO MICROSOFT INFORMATION STORE/PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

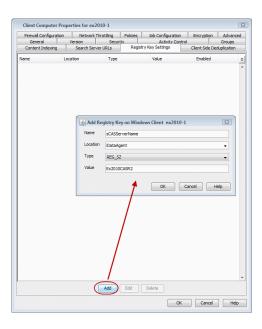
For Exchange Server 2010 you will not be able to log on to Microsoft Information Store and profile creation may also fail, if there is a mismatch in the Exchange Server name and the Exchange Server name specified in the agent properties that has the Client Access Role installed.

SOLUTION

For Exchange Server 2010 verify that the Exchange Server name specified in agent properties has the Client Access Role installed. In case the Exchange Server does not have the Client Access Role specified follow the steps given below to point to another server with client access role installed on it:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter ${\tt sCASServerName}$ in the Name field.
- 6. From the Location list, select iDataAgent.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 8. Enter a CAS server name (e.g., Ex2010CASR2) in the Value field. The CAS server is used to create the profile.

9. Click OK.



PROCESS HANGS WHILE ENABLING/DISABLING MAPI

PROBLEM

Process hangs while enabling/disabling MAPI because the Exchange client is unable to connect Twith the Global catalogue.

SOLUTION 1.

Create a new profile using Enable Referral Option by following one of the options mentioned below:

Open the command prompt.

Type C:\>gcreconnect.

Usage: GCReconnect [-?] -m mailbox -s server [-e] [-x] [-n name] [-1] [-r] [-w]

Options:

- -m mailbox Specifies the mailbox to log on to.
- -s server Specifies the Exchange server where the mailbox resides.
- -e Enable referral and reconnect If referral and reconnect are not enabled, MAPI will connect directly to the Exchange server for name lookup
- -x Enable additional referral and reconnect settings for Exchange 2007 Implies-e
- -n name Specifies a name to resolve with ResolveName If not specified, QueryIdentity will be used instead
- -I Loop over MAPILogonEx. Will log on and off repeatedly until key is hit
- -r Loop over ResolveName. Will log on once and do name lookup repeatedly until key is hit Requires -n, not valid with -I
- -w Wait for keyboard input before and after creating and configuring profile

-? Displays this usage information.

SOLUTION 2

Delete the existing profile and follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter enableReferral in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.

- 8. Enter 1 in the **Value** field.
- 9. Click **OK**.

ERROR DURING THE INSTALLATION OF MAPI CDO ON EXCHANGE 2003

PROBLEM

If you try to install MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003, you may encounter error messages during installation. This is due to lack of compatibility between MAPI CDO and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to uninstall MAPI CDO and install MAPI by following the steps given below:

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Navigate to the system32 folder.
- 2. Run FixMapi.
- 3. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 4. Reboot the computer.
- 5. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.

PROBLEM

On the Proxy Computer that has Outlook installed, in case there are any MAPI issues, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo if any.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

MICROSOFT MAPI VERSION ERROR

PROBLEM

During Outlook installation, you might encounter a MAPI version error. This is because two MAPI versions cannot coexist.

SOLUTION

The MAPI version error may occur if you have a 32-Bit Outlook version and you are trying to install a 64-Bit Outlook version. This is because the 64-Bit MAPI and 32-bit MAPI cannot coexist on the same computer. It is recommended to uninstall one of the outlook versions.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011D)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message if the Outlook profile is in the **Cache** mode.

SOLUTION

- 1. On the client computer, open the ${\bf Control\ Panel}$ and click the ${\bf Mail}$ icon.
- 2. Open the <**Profile**>, click the email account and select the related <**Account**>.
- 3. Click Change.
- 4. Verify that the Use Cached Exchange Mode box is unchecked.

ERROR MESSAGE: EXTASK.CPP:HRINITIALIZE(1342) INITIALIZING MAPI SUBSYSTEM

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when a backup process hangs due to the MAPI CDO conflict.

SOLUTION 1.

1. On the client computer navigate to the following files:

Mapi32.dll

msmapi32.dll

emsmdb32.dll

- 2. Right-click the above mentioned files, click **Properties** and click the **Details** tab.
- 3. Click the **Version** tab and verify that all the files point to Outlook.

SOLUTION 2.

On the Proxy Computer:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

Note that running **FixMapi** will solve the above mentioned error on the proxy computer.

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.
- 4. Install Outlook.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when there is no connectivity with Client Access Role server for Exchange 2010 and for Mailbox Role Server for Exchange 2007.

SOLUTION

Ensure for Exchange 2010 there is connectivity to the Client Access Role Server. In case of Exchange 2007, ensure connectivity to Mailbox Role Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: CANNOT OPEN FOLDER FOR MAILBOX "USERNAME" ERROR:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010F)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the backup processes hangs in a pending state and the extended right on your service account is not set to **Receive As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION 1

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.

- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.

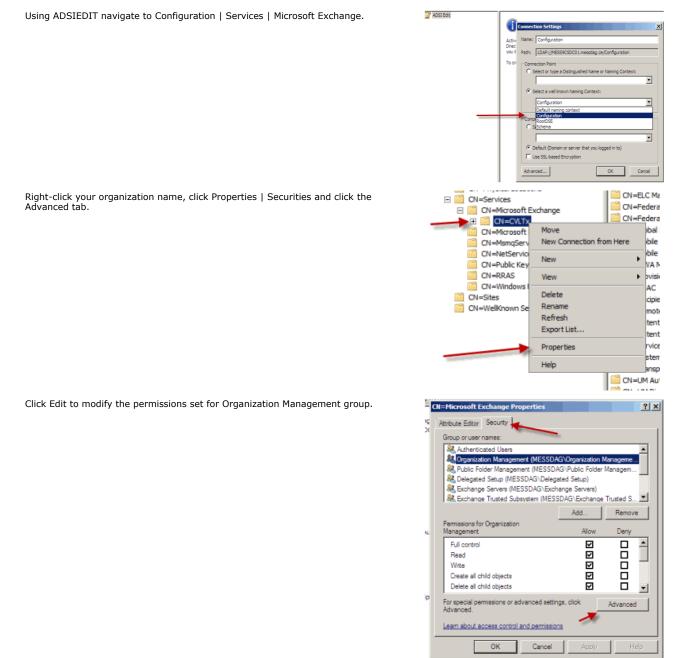
If there are no permission errors through the above mentioned process, then the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server as follows:

SOLUTION 2

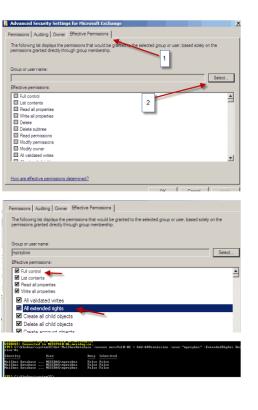
1.

2.

з.



- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- 5. Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.





The backup account should display the following as selected:

- Full Control
- All Extended Rights
- Send As

6.

- Receive As
- Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

SOLUTION 3

For Exchange 2010 and 2007 verify that the **Cache** mode is disabled on the Service Account. For more details, on Microsoft permission settings, see Allow Mailbox Access.

ERROR MESSAGE: COULD NOT OPEN THE EXCHANGE PRIVATE MESSAGE STORE WITH PROFILE EXCHADM (E_FAIL (0x80004005))

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use **MFCMapi** utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the \langle **Mailbox** \rangle and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for **Top of Information Store**, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: ERROR CODE [28:153]: THE MAILBOX PROFILE USED BY THIS PRODUCT IS INVALID. PLEASE TRY USING MDBVU, OUTLOOK OR ANY OTHER EXCHANGE CLIENT TO CHECK IF THE

PROFILE WORKS CORRECTLY

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

Agent Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to obtain or provide general and/or user account information for the agent.

Client Name

Displays the name of the client computer on which this Agent is installed.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the Agent is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the identity of the Agent that is installed on the client computer.

Installed date

Displays the date on which the Agent was installed or upgraded on the client computer.

Profile Name

Displays the name of the profile that is associated with the appropriate Administrator Mailbox. Use this space to modify this name.

Mailbox Name

Displays the name of the mailbox that is associated with the appropriate Administrator profile. Use this space to modify this name.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Click Change Account to modify the account credentials.

Change Account

Click to change the Exchange Administrator Account associated with this agent. These credentials are initially provided during agent installation. Populate the resulting dialog box only if you changed the Exchange Administrator Account and it now differs from the one displayed in the **Exchange Administrator Account** field.

Backup Deleted Item Retention

Specifies whether to enable backups for Deleted Item Retention. By default, the Deleted Item Retention folder is not included in backups.

When cleared, backups of the Deleted Item Retention folder are disabled.

Use CSVDE For Discovery

Specifies whether to use CSVDE filtering for discovery operations. When selected, a CSVDE filter must be entered into the corresponding entry space.

Use of this option requires expert-level knowledge of CSVDE, which is a Microsoft tool used for extracting and filtering information from Active Directory. Incorrect use of the CSVDE filtering option can result in failed discovery and data protection operations.

The following example filters out system mailboxes residing on the SERVERNAME server from discovery operations:

"(&(msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=SERVERNAME)(!(CN=SystemMailbox{*)))"

When cleared, user-specified CSVDE filtering will not be used for discovery operations.

Exchange Server Name

Displays the hostname of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. Use this space to modify the hostname if the name displayed is incorrect. If more than one hostname is entered, separate the hostnames with the semi-colon delimiter.

When backing up Exchange 2010 Database Availability Group (DAG) servers, enter the Mailbox server role that is used by backup and restore operations and configure the sCASServerName registry key to specify a CAS server for creating the profile.

Exchange Version

Lists the version of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. To modify the version, select one from the list.

Manage Content Automatically

Specifies to automatically assign auto discovered content to the subclients.

By default, if a change is made to an automatically discovered mailbox that alters the association criteria it was discovered with, the next backup will automatically reassign the mailbox to the appropriate subclient that satisfies the new criteria.

Clear this option to disable this functionality.

Back to Top

Version

Use this dialog box to view the iDataAgent version.

Activity Control

Use this dialog box to enable or disable data management and data recovery operations on a selected client or client computer group.

Enable Backup

Specifies whether data management operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data management operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data management operations from this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data management operations for this agent run to completion.
- Stopped data management operations for this agent cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data management operations for this agent do not run until this option is enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Enable Restore

Specifies whether data recovery operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data recovery operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data recovery operations for this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running data recovery operations for this agent run to completion.
- Pending data recovery operations for this agent do not run until data recovery operations are enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Agent Properties (AD Server)

Use this dialog box to specify one or more Active Directory (AD) servers (i.e., domain controllers) that host an Exchange Server. Specifying additional AD Servers provides complete backup coverage of all Exchange mailboxes.

AD Server List

Displays the domain name of one or more Active Directory (AD) servers. You can use this space along with the **Add** and **Delete** buttons to include or remove Active Directory (AD) servers. For example, you may need to add an AD server in these scenarios:

- In cases where an Exchange Server is installed in a child domain and the schema master is in the parent domain, add the Active Directory (AD) server name of the schema master in the parent domain.
- In cases where a domain or forest has multiple domain controllers which may not fully replicate to each other, multiple domain controllers can be added to

ensure a complete list of mailboxes are backed up.

Add

Click to include an Active Directory (AD) server. Enter either a hostname, a fully-qualified domain name, or IP address.

Delete

Click to remove an Active Directory (AD) server.

Agent Properties (Storage Device)

Use this tab to view or change the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing.

Filter Storage Policy

Displays the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing that is associated with this agent. To associate a filter storage policy to a new agent or to change the filter storage policy associated with an existing agent, click one in the list.

Change User Account

Use this dialog box to view or change the Exchange Administrator account information that was set during installation.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Use this space to modify the account if it has changed and now differs from the one displayed here or if the account was incorrectly entered during installation.

Password

Use this space to specify or modify the Administrator Account password.

Confirm Password

Use this space to retype the password for confirmation.

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Save as Script

Use this dialog box to choose a name and path for the script file and the mode of execution.

Client

Enter or select the name of the client computer where the script will be created.

Path

Enter the path for the script that will be created.

Browse

Click this button to browse to a path for the command line script.

- Scripts are not supported on the Windows NT platform.
- It is recommended not to use any reserved device names (e.g., LPT1) as the name of the file.
- The file names are not case-sensitive.
- Do not end the file name with a trailing space or a period. Although the underlying file system may support such names, the operating system does not support them.

Mode

Synchronous

Specifies that the script execute in synchronous mode. A synchronous operation exits only when the operation has completed. This option is only available when scripting a single job.

Asynchronous

Specifies that the script execute in asynchronous mode. An asynchronous operation submits the job to the CommServe and exits immediately, returning control to the calling program or script.

Specify User Account to Run the Script

Specifies to use the given user account to save the operation as a script.

• Use the Currently Logged in User Account

Click to use the same user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• User Name

Type the user name that was used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• Password

Type the password for the user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

• Use a Different User Account

Click to specify a different user account to save the operation as a script.

User Name

Enter the different user name to be used for saving the operation as a script.

Password

Enter the password for the user account to be used for saving the operation as a script.

• Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

Back to Top

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the Resume option. This

option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Job Retry

Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or operation for which the information is being displayed.

Enable Total Running Time

The maximum elapsed time, in hours and minutes, from the time that the job is created. When the specified maximum elapsed time is reached, as long as the job is in the "Running" state, it will continue; if the job is not in the "Running" state when the specified time is reached, Job Manager will kill the job.

Enable Number of Retries

The number of times that Job Manager will attempt to restart the job. Once the maximum number of retry attempts has been reached, if the job has still not restarted successfully, Job Manager will kill the job. Note that this job-based setting will not be valid if restartability has been turned off in the Job Management Control Panel.

Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires

Option to kill the job when the specified Total Running Time has elapsed, even if its state is "Running". This option is available only if you have specified a Total Running Time.

Vault Tracking

Select options to export and track media, using Vault Tracker.

👷 Vault Tracking Options will be displayed only when a Vault Tracker license is available in the CommServe.

Vault Tracking options are only applicable for data protection operations using a storage policy associated with a library containing removable media (e.g., tape, optical or stand-alone.)

Export media after the job finishes

Specifies the media used by the data protection operation and media with the specific Media Status (if specified) will be exported and tracked by Vault Tracker.

Exclude Media Not Copied

When selected, allows you to exclude media with jobs that have to be copied.

Media Status

• All

Click to select all media. Clear this option to select media with a specific status.

• Active

Click to select media with its status marked as active.

• Full

Click to select media with its status marked as full.

Overwrite Protected

Click to select media with its status marked as read-only .

Bad

Click to select media with its status marked as bad.

Export Location

Specifies the destination location and lists the stationary locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Track Transit

Specifies that transit information must be tracked, and lists the transit locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Use Virtual Mail Slots

Specifies the exported media is stored within the library in the virtual mail slots defined in the Library Properties (Media) dialog box.

Filter Media By Retention

Specifies that the system must automatically filter media based on whether the media has extended retention jobs or not.

Media with extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with at least one extended retention job will be exported.

• Media with no extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with no extended retention jobs will be exported.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Alert Wizard

Threshold and Notification Criteria Selection

Use this step to select or modify the alert threshold and notification criteria. (See Alerts and Monitoring in Books Online for detailed information.)

Alert Criteria

Select the conditions that will initiate the alert. The alerts available are grouped into five categories:

- Application Management
- Automatic Updates
- Configuration
- Job Management
- Media Management

Send Individual Notification for This Alert

Enable this option to send an individual alert notification, instead of multiple alerts within a single alert notification, for the criteria selected.

Notification Criteria

Select whether the alert notification should be repeated, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Escalation Notification Criteria

Some alert notifications allow for configuration of an escalated alert. If this option is available, select the time at which the escalated alert notification should be sent, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Notify only when jobs qualify for extended retention*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that are set for extended retention.

Notify only when job contains failed objects*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that contain failed objects.

*This notification option is applicable for Job Management Data Protection alerts only.

ALERT CRITERIA

The following tables identify the types of available alerts within each category, the user capabilities needed for each alert, the entities the alert can be associated with, the types of criteria available, and a description.

APPLICATION MANAGEMENT

		Entities that can be Associated with the Alert		Description
ContinuousDataReplicator		Clients	Log File Volume	One of the following has occurred:
	Alert Management capability with association at the object associated	Client Groups	Reached Low Watermark	• A destination computer has imposed throttling on the source computer, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer.
	with the alert.			• A destination computer has stopped the source computer from sending logs, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer.
				• A source computer has run out of log space, and CDR has stopped monitoring the source paths for all the Replication Pairs, put the pairs in an aborted state, and deleted all log files.
				The free disk space thresholds are configurable in the ContinuousDataReplicator Properties (Operational Parameters) window.
			No transfer activity	There has been no data replicated from the source to the destination. The CommServe automatically checks for transfer activity every 15 minutes.
			Failed Replication	A Replication Pair's job has failed, been aborted by a user, or aborted by the system.
	Agent Management or Alert Management capability with association at the	rClients Client Groups	Journal Mailbox Threshold Exceeded	The journal mailbox exceeded its limit. (The mailbox threshold is set by the user in the CommCell console.)
				NOTES
	object associated with the alert.			• See Configure the Agent for a Journal Mailbox Threshold Alert in Books Online for step-by-step instructions for setting the threshold limit on the agent.
				• If you would like to change the interval at which the threshold limit is checked or the time-out for the monitoring process, you can set these through the nArcMonitorIntervalInMins and
				nArcMonitorTimeOutInMins registry keys.
SharePoint	Agent Management or Alert Management capability with	Clients Client Groups	New Virtual Servers Were Found. Restart IIS Services.	New virtual servers were found on the SharePoint server after an archive operation, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted.
	association at the object associated with the alert.		SharePoint version is upgraded. Restart IIS.	The SharePoint server has been upgraded, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted.

AUTOMATIC UPDATES

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Download Updates	Administrative		Job Failed	Updates failed to be downloaded.
	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded	Updates were downloaded successfully.
	with CommCell association.		Job Succeeded with Errors	A download updates operation completed with errors.
Install Updates	Administrative	Machines	Job Failed	An update installation failed.
	Management or Alert	Client Groups	Job Succeeded	An update installation completed successfully.
	Management capability with CommCell association.		Job Succeeded with Errors	An update installation operation completed with errors.
			Job Initiated	An update installation was initiated.
Updates Available to Download	Administrative Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell association.		Updates Available to Download	An update is available to be downloaded for installation. The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
Upgrades and Service Packs	Management or Alert	Machines Client Groups	Release Upgrade Required	A new release software upgrade is required. (If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent software version is lower than that of the CommServe.)

association.		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
	Service Pack Required	A software update is required.
		(If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent service pack version is lower than that of the CommServe.)
		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.

CONFIGURATION

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Clients	Agent Management or Alert Management	Management bility with ciation at the ct associated with	Properties Modified	The properties of a client were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
	capability with association at the object associated with the alert.			The minimum thresholds have been reached for the client software installation and system directories, which include the Job Results.
				The threshold for Job Results directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's Client Computers Properties window.
				The thresholds for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				If Data Classification Enabler is installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 85 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				For computers where QSnap and either the Quick Recovery Agent or ContinuousDataReplicator are installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 80 percent or more of a volume's disk space is consumed, for all of the client computer's volumes.
				If Content Indexing Engine is installed, this alert, if configured will be sent for the following:
				• If 80 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				• If the minimum free space falls below 10 GB.
		Agents	Properties Modified	The properties of an agent were modified, new content was added (for the Oracle agent only), or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties. This alert is also generated if the content, pre-post commands, or storage policy of a subclient were modified.
CommCell	Administrative Management or Alert		Alert every <i>n</i> failed login attempts	There were <i>n</i> failed attempts made to login to the CommCell.
	Management capability with CommCell association		Alert CommServe License Expires With <i>n</i> Days	The CommServe license will expire in <i>n</i> days.
			Alert when License	The CommServe license has reached <i>n</i> %.
			Consumed reaches <i>n</i> %	License Capacity Usage details get updated every 24 hours. It may also be updated if a Data Aging Job is run or if CommServe services are restarted.
			Properties Modified	The properties of the CommServe were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
			Alert Modified	A user was added or removed to an alert, an alert was modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to modify the properties of an alert.
			Force De-configured	A user failed or successfully forced de-configured an Agent, Client, or MediaAgent.
			Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the CommServe software installation and system directories or there is insufficient disk space for the CommServe database to grow.
				The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				The threshold for CommServe database directory, and the frequency interval at which the database directory is monitored, are configurable in the CommCell Console's Control Panel - System window (Database space check interval and Database Space Check Thresholds).

Library	Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association	Libraries	Properties Modified	The properties of a library were modified, an overwrite media option was selected for the library, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties of a library.
MediaAgents	MediaAgents Media Management or Alert Management	MediaAgents	Properties Modified	The properties of a MediaAgent were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a MediaAgent.
	capability with MediaAgent association		Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the MediaAgent software installation and system directories, which include the Index Cache.
			The threshold for MediaAgents Index Cache directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's MediaAgents Properties window.	
				The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
			DDB Store got corrupted	Deduplication Store of a MediaAgent is corrupted.
			MediaAgent went Offline	A MediaAgent was switched on/offline.
			Notify only if Condition persists for	Notify only if the condition persists for certain length of time.
			Repeat notification every	Repeat the notification for every n hours and m minutes. (n and m are set by the user at the time of configuration.)
Schedules	Alert Management capability with CommCell association		Scheduler Changes	A schedule was added, deleted, or modified, a job failed to be scheduled, a user added, removed, or modified a holiday.
Storage Policy	Storage Policy Management or Alert Management capability with storage policy association	Storage Policies	Properties Modified	The properties of a storage policy were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a storage policy.

JOB MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Auxiliary Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An auxiliary copy operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	An auxiliary copy operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled auxiliary copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An auxiliary copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An auxiliary copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Auxiliary Copy fallen behind alert	The following criteria have been met for the selected storage policy:
				• data to be copied is more than <i>n</i> GB
				• jobs have not been copied in more than <i>n</i> days
				(<i>n</i> is set by the user in the Storage Policy Properties (Advanced) window.)
				The interval at which the storage policy is checked for this criteria can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Auxiliary Copy Configuration) window; the default Interval (Hours) between Auxiliary Copy Fallen Behind alerts is 24 hours.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An auxiliary copy operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a network failure.
Backup Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A backup copy operation completed successfully
Workflow	Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell		Job Succeeded with Errors	A backup copy operation completed with errors.
	association		Job Skipped	A scheduled backup copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A backup copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A backup copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.

			Job Started	A backup copy operation was started by a user.
Continuous Data Replication	Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capability at each associated entity.	Clients Agents Replication Sets	Job Succeeded	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	A scheduled Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a network failure.
Data Aging	Administrative		Job Succeeded	A data aging operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded with Errors	A data aging operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled data aging operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data aging operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data aging operation was killed by a user.
Data Classification	Alert Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Classification Failed	A data classification operation failed to write to the database.
Data Protection	Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	A data protection operation completed successfully. A data protection operation completed with errors.
	at each associated entity.	Agents Backup Sata	Job Skipped	A scheduled data protection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Backup Sets Instance/Partition All Subclients** Subclients	Job Failed	A data protection operation failed, failed to start, or was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data protection operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			No Data Protection	A data protection operation failed to start.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			No Backup for last <i>n</i> Days	A data protection operation did not complete successfully for the last <i>n</i> days. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Job exceeded running time of <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a suspended, running or in a pending state for more than n hours. (n is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a network failure.
			Increase in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	A data protection job is at least <i>n</i> % larger in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of increase in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size increase may
			Decrease in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	be larger than the $n\%$.) A data protection job is at least $n\%$ smaller in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of decrease in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size decrease may be larger than the $n\%$.)
			Notify only when jobs qualify for extension retention	The data protection job is set for extended retention.
			Notify only when job contains failed objects	The data protection job contains one or more failed objects.

		Instance/Partition		A data recovery operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data recovery operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Job Started	A data recovery operation was started by a user.
			List Media	A user requested a list of media used for the original data protection operation.
Data Verification	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A data verification operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	A data verification operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	A scheduled data verification operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data verification operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data verification operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user. A data verification operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours
Disaster Recovery	Administration		Job Succeeded	(<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.) A disaster recovery backup completed successfully, a backup
Backup	Management or Alert			set was pruned during the operation (default = 5 backup sets)
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Succeeded with Errors	A disaster recovery backup operation completed with errors/warnings.
	association.		Job Skipped	A scheduled disaster recovery backup ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A disaster recovery backup failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or no storage policy was defined for the operation.
			Job Activity	A disaster recovery backup operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A disaster recovery backup operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Erase Data	Administration Management or Alert Management capability	Clients	Job Succeeded	An erase data operation completed successfully
		Agents	Job Succeeded with Errors	An erase data operation completed with errors/warnings.
	with CommCell association.	Backup Set Subclients	Job Skipped	A scheduled erase data operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Subchents	Job Failed	An erase data operation failed, failed to start, was killed by a user, was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An erase data operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
Media Erase	Library Management or Alert Management	Libraries	Job Succeeded	A media erase operation completed successfully.
	capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors	A media erase operation completed with errors/warnings.
			Job Failed Job Activity	A media erase operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. A media erase operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by
			SOD Activity	a user.
Media Inventory	Library Management or	Libraries	Job Succeeded	An inventory operation completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors Job Failed	An inventory operation completed with errors.
Media Refreshing	Administrative	Storage Policies	Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	An inventory operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the data protection
	Management or Alert Management capability	-	(Phase failures) Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	operation after a phase failure. There were n attempts made to resume the data protection
	with CommCell		(Network failures)	operation after a network failure.
	association		Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully. An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
		- ···	Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
Offline Content	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully.
Indexing	Management or Alert Management capability	-	Job Succeeded with	An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.

	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Information	Administrative		Job Succeeded	An information management operation completed successfully.
Management	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Skipped	An information management operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
	with CommCell association		Job Succeeded with Errors	An information management operation completed with errors.
			Job Failed	An information management operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An information management operation was killed by a user.
		Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An information management operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)	
Report	Administration		Job Activity	A report operation was killed by a user.
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Failed	A report operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or a report failed to be saved.
	association.		Job Skipped	A report operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A report operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A report operation completed with errors.
SRM Data Collection	Management capability	Clients	Alert every n attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a phase failure.
	with CommCell association.	Client Groups	Alert every n attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a network failure.
			Job Activity	A data collection operation was killed by a user.
			Job Failed	A data collection operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Skipped	A data collection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A data collection operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A data collection operation completed with errors.
			No Data Protection	A data collection operation failed to start.

**DataArchiver agents only

MEDIA MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Device Status	Library Management or	Libraries	Drive went Offline	A drive in a library switched offline.
	Alert Management		Library went Offline	A library switched offline.
	capability with CommCell association		Mount Path went Offline	A mount path went offline.
са	Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association.	r Libraries	Insufficient Storage	The number of spare media inside the library for a scratch pool and cleaning pool fell below the low water mark defined or there is no spare media inside the library. For a disk library, the free disk space fell below the low water mark or there is insufficient disk space.
			Maintenance Occurred	A drive cleaning operation completed successfully or failed.
			Maintenance Required	The library or drive has exceeded its threshold, a drive requires cleaning, or the mount path has exceeded its fragmentation threshold.
				The percentage threshold at which the mount path is deemed fragmented can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Service Configuration) window, Mount Path Fragmentation Threshold Percentage option.
			Media Handling Errors	The system found a duplicate barcode/label in the library, or the system detected a media in the wrong library.
			Media Handling Required	A media is not in the library, or a media in a drive needs changing because the system detected wrong or no media in the drive.
			Media Mount and Usage Errors	A media is marked read only, bad or depreciated, or a mount or an unmount error has occurred.

			User Overwrite of Media	The media was overwritten due to an option selected by the user.
			Media Ready in Mail Slot	Media in mail slot is ready to be picked up by the user.
				NOTES
				 This criterion is applicable to a VaultTracker media export (to mail slot) only, which requires a VaultTracker license. For more information, see License Administration in Books Online.
				• It is recommended that the <media list=""> and <more MEDIA Y/N> tokens be added to the notification message when configuring this alert. For more information, see Alert Tokens in Books Online.</more </media>
			Media Recalled	The media has been retrieved from an export location for a specific operation. For more information, see Recall Media in Books Online.
VaultTracker	Library Management or	Tracking Policies	Job Succeeded	A pending media movement completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with Library		Job Succeeded with Errors	A pending media movement completed with errors.
	association.		Job Failed	A pending media movement failed.
			Job Initiated	A pending media movement was created.
			Media Handling Required	A media is moved to a virtual mail slot, or a media needs import.
			Media Picked Up	Media was picked up.
			Media Reached Destination	A media has reached the required destination.
			Media Returned to Source	A media was returned to the source.
			Rolled Back	A media movement was rolled back.

Browse Options

Use this dialog box to select the basic options under which you want to browse the data secured by a data protection operation in the selected client, agent, instance/partition, or backup set level depending on the functionality of a given agent.

The system provides several browse options. These options influence the behavior of the browse operation in the subsequent Browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Browse the Latest Data

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data from the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) in the Browse window. (This option is selected by default.)

Specify Browse Time

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data, up to the specified date and time in the Browse window. Data secured after the specified date and time will be omitted in this window.

Browse Data Before/Browse to Point-In-Time

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display the data in the Browse window.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Select from Available Browse Times

Displays a list containing the time of different backup jobs available in the destination, from which data can be browsed. For Workstation Backup Agent, this option displays the list of recovery points available in the destination. Select the desired time.

Use MediaAgent

Specifies the name of MediaAgent that will be used to perform the browse (and restore) operation. If necessary, you can change the name of the MediaAgent. For example, if the library is shared and you wish to use a specific MediaAgent (instead of the system selected MediaAgent, or a MediaAgent which may be idle, or less critical) or if you know that the media containing the data you wish to restore is available in the library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

If the media containing the data is not available in the tape/optical library attached to the MediaAgent, the system will automatically prompt you to insert the appropriate media. In the case of a disk library, the operation will fail if the requested data is not available in the disk library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

Client Computer

Lists the client computers available for the browse operation. This option is available only when the browse operation is performed either from the client node in

the CommCell Browser, Browse & Recover option from the Tools menu in the CommCell Console or when the New Browse button is clicked in the Browse window.

Specify Browse Path

Specifies the starting point for the browse operation. Also provides a space for you to type the path.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Table View

Specifies whether the backup data should be displayed as database tables during the browse operation.

Image Browsing

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse times.

The main difference between image browse and no-image browse is that deleted items are shown only by the no-image browse.

Keep in mind that the display of deleted items depends on whether full backup transparency is enabled. If full backup transparency is disabled (the default), only those deleted items that existed back through the most recent full backup are shown. However if full backup transparency is enabled, the deleted items shown includes those that existed during the time interval from initial index creation through the time being browsed.

To determine whether full backup transparency is enabled or disabled, from the CommCell Browser, right-click the *i*DataAgent and then select **Properties.** Click the **Index** tab. If **Create new index on full backup** is selected, then full backup transparency is disabled.

File Level Browse (Restore individual files/folders from disk image)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the files and folders secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Volume Level Browse (Restore the disk image/volume)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the volumes secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Database

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse individual databases.

File/File Group

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse file groups and files for the databases.

Page Size

Use the space to enter the default number of objects to be displayed in the Browse window. This field reverts back to the default setting after use. In the Browse window, you can browse through each page list by selecting the appropriate page number.

Browse Data from SQL

Specifies that SharePoint documents can be mined from an offline mining database.

SQL Instance

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the SQL instance that is associated with the offline mining database. Click ... to select from a list or type the instance name.

User Account

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Username and Password of the account that can access the instance. Click Edit to enter the username and password.

Config Database

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Configuration Database that will be used to mine SharePoint documents. Click ... to select from a list or type the Configuration Database name.

Browse only volumes

Specifies that the browse operation must display only a list of volumes; required for a Volume Level Restore.

Advanced

Click to access additional browse capabilities.

List Media

Click to display media required for restore or index restore operations.

Type of Intended Restore (Virtual Server *i*DataAgent)

This section provides the facility to select the type of restore you want to perform following the Browse operation.

• Individual Files/Folders

Select this option if you intend on performing a file/folder-level restore.

Entire Volume

Select this option if you intend on performing a volume-level restore.

• Container Restore

Select this option if you intend on performing a disk-level restore.

Browse/Restore Directory Server data from database

For Active Directory Offline Mining, enter the path to the database from which you want to restore directory server data. For Active Directory Server databases, this file will be the ntds.dit file. For ADAM and Lightweight Server databases, this file will be the adamntds.dit file. Click **Browse** to locate the database or enter the complete database path in the **File Path** field.

Back to Top

Advanced Browse Options

Use this dialog to access additional browse capabilities for the browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Use MediaAgent

Select the MediaAgent associated with the data you want to browse, or select Any MediaAgent.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Page Size

Specifies the number of objects to be displayed in the browse window.

Include Metadata

Specifies that the browse operation results must also include data containing metadata information.

Exclude Data Before

Specifies that the browse operation must return data that has been backed up after the specified date. Also provides a space for you to type the date and time.

Browse from copy precedence

When selected, the system retrieves the data from the storage policy copy with the specified copy precedence number. If data does not exist in the specified copy, the operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy.

When cleared, (or by default) the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves the data from the other copies of the storage policy starting with the copy with the lowest copy precedence and proceeding through the copies with higher copy precedence. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.

Back to Top

List Media

Use this dialog box to select the options that must be used to predict the required media.

Media For the Latest Data

Specifies whether the list media operation must display media associated with the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) This option is selected by default.

Specify Time Range

Specifies whether the whether the list media operation must display media associated with the specified date and time.

Data Before/Time Range

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display media.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Advanced

Click to access additional options.

Operation Window

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or delete operation rules for system operations.

Name

The friendly name assigned to the operation window.

Operations

The operations included in the rule.

Days

Displays the days in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Do not run intervals

Displays the times in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Add

Click this button to add an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Modify

Click this button to modify an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Delete

Click this button to delete an operation rule.

Ignore Operation Rules at Higher Levels (not applicable at the CommServe and Client group level)

Select this option to disable all operation rules set at levels above the currently selected entity.

Subclient Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to add, modify or view general information on the selected subclient.

Client Name

Displays the name of the Client computer to which this subclient belongs.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the subclient is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the name of the Agent to which this subclient belongs.

Backup Set

Displays the name of the Backup Set to which this subclient belongs.

Subclient Name

Displays the name of this Subclient. You can use this space to enter or modify the name of the subclient.

Default Subclient

Displays whether this is the default subclient. When a subclient is designated as the default subclient, it will back up all the data for the subclient that is not assigned to any other subclients within the backup set, and it cannot be deleted.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Back to Top

Subclient Properties (Content)

Use this tab to define the contents of a new subclient or to change the content of an existing subclient. Mailboxes that are listed in the **Contents of subclient** pane are backed up/migrated/archived/content indexed by the subclient.

Contents of subclient

Displays a list of mailboxes included as content for this subclient. The autodiscovered mailboxes are displayed in italics whereas manually discovered mailboxes are displayed in normal font. This is to differentiate which mailboxes will be qualified for Automatic Content Management.

• Display Name

Displays the Display Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

• Alias Name

Displays the Alias Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

SMTP Address

Displays the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Address of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the Mailbox Store in which the mailbox resides.

Configure

Click to discover and change the associations of the mailboxes to the subclients. Any mailboxes included as content for a user-defined backup set/subclient will be automatically excluded from the default backup set/subclient.

Delete Archived messages after successful archive operations

Specifies whether to delete the contents of the mailbox after the data has been successfully archived. Selecting this option will cause the system to delete the data from mailboxes included in subclient content after the data has been successfully archived.

Only backup following folders (separated by ;)

This allows you to configure the Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent to backup messages that reside in a specific root-level mailbox folder for the subclient of any backup set. Other folders in the mailbox will not be backed up.

Perform backup using mining off snapshot

Click to run a data protection job from an offline snapshot copy of the Exchange data. Snap mining can improve performance in that it offloads processing on the production application server.

Exchange DB client

Specifies the client computer where the Exchange Database is installed.

Client

Specifies the client computer that was used to create the snapshot.

Agents

Specifies the agent that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Instance

Specifies the instance that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Backupset

Specifies the backupset that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

subclient to use

Specifies the subclient that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data

Exchange DB subclient to use

Specifies the Exchange Database iDataAgent subclient to use for mining the SnapProtect backup.

Proxy Client

Click and select a proxy computer to run the data protection job of the snapshot on a Proxy Client.

Subclient Properties (Auto-discovery)

Use this dialog box to view and establish the criteria to automatically discover new mailboxes. The criteria that can be configured depends on the assignment method that was selected in **Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover)**. Assignment methods include:

- Regular Expressions
- Database Affinity
- Active Directory User Group Affinity

Automatically add new mailboxes that don't qualify for membership in any of the sub-clients

Specifies whether to assign auto-discovered mailboxes to the contents of this subclient. This is useful in cases where mailboxes have not been assigned to any other subclient within the Backup Set. This option applies only to the default subclient. Clearing this option will disable auto-discovery on the default subclient.

Add Mailbox Display Name

Displays a list of mailbox display name patterns i.e., regular expressions. Mailboxes that match the specified patterns entered in **Mailbox Display Names** will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Mailbox Display Names

Use this space to enter a mailbox display name pattern using regular expressions (i.e., wildcards). See Wildcards for a list of supported wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Accounting*	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with Accounting followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
[!ei]nsure	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with nsure but does not begin with e or i (e.g., unsure).
[!a-k]Lee	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with a through k and that ends with Lee (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).

Add

Click to commit the mailbox display name pattern for auto-discovery entered in **Mailbox Display Names** and add it the **Add Mailbox Display Name** display pane. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Remove

Click to delete the selected mailbox display name pattern. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Newly discovered mailboxes from the following mailbox stores will automatically be associated with this subclient

Displays a list of databases. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Database Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

The new discovered mailboxes of the following AD User Group will be backed up to this subclient

Displays a list of the Active Directory User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **AD User Group Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Configuration

Click to configure the databases or AD User Groups that will be used to automatically discover mailboxes and assign them to this subclient.

Back to Top

Configure Mailbox Stores for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to change the assignment of databases to subclients. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the name of the database where newly discovered mailboxes for the assigned subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient whose newly discovered mailboxes will be backed up to the assigned database. To change the subclient assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Change all selected stores to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to databases for auto-discovery. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more databases and click a subclient in the list.

Configure AD User Group for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to add or change Active Directory (AD) User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

AD User Group Name

Displays the name of the Active Directory User Group where newly discovered mailboxes for this subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient that is assigned to the Active Directory User Group. Newly discovered mailboxes that reside in the AD User Group will be assigned to this subclient. To change the assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Move all selected items to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to Active Directory User Groups. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more Active Directory User Groups and click a subclient in the list.

Discover

Specifies to discover an Active Directory User Group. When clicked, the Authenticate Active Directory Domain Controller dialog box will prompt you to provide authentication information before proceeding with the discovery process.

Configure Subclient Mailbox Affinity

Mailbox Affinity

Use this list to select the assignment method by which newly discovered mailboxes will be included in the contents of user-defined subclients. To change the assignment method, select one from the list. Choose from the following assignment methods:

• Ad Hoc

Manual assignment of newly discovered mailboxes.

• Mailbox

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes that match a wildcard pattern or mailbox name specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

• Active Directory User Group

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes by Active Directory User Group specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

Subclient Properties (Pre/Post Process)

Use the Pre/Post Process tab to add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the selected subclient.

Pre-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute before this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Post-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute after this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Run Post Backup Process for all attempts

Specifies whether this process will execute for all attempts to run the phase. Selecting this option will execute the post backup process for all attempts to run the phase, including situations where the job phase is interrupted, suspended, or fails. Otherwise, when the checkbox is cleared the specified process will only execute for successful, killed, or failed jobs.

PreSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PreSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

PostSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PostSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

On Source

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the source computer.

On Proxy

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the proxy computer.

Browse

Click to search for and select the Pre/Post Process.

Run As / User Account

Displays either the Local System Account, or for added security, another account as having permission to run these commands.

Change

Click to add or modify the account that has permission to run these commands.

Back to Top

Storage Device

Use this dialog box to establish the storage device related settings on the selected subclient. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or enabler for which the information is being displayed.

The following tabs are displayed:

- (Data) Storage Policy
- Data Transfer Option
- Deduplication

STORAGE POLICY

Use this tab to select or view storage policy settings on the selected subclient.

Data/Database/Transaction Log Storage Policy

Displays the storage policy to which this subclient is currently associated. To associate a storage policy to a new subclient or to change the storage policy associated with an existing subclient, click one in the list.

Incremental Storage Policy

Displays the name of the Incremental Storage Policy associated with this subclient, if the storage policy has the Incremental Storage Policy option enabled.

Data Paths

Click to view or modify the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy.

Number of Data/Database/Transaction Log Backup Streams

Displays the number of streams used for backup operations. To change the number of streams, click one in the list. For DB2 DPF, be sure to set the appropriate number of streams for each database partition by double-clicking the appropriate **Stream** space and typing the desired number.

Client/Instance/Status/Stream

Displays the names of the instances according to current backup priority along with other associated information that are included in the Oracle RAC node. To change the backup priority of the instances, click the instance name as appropriate and use the directional arrows provided.

Maximum Backup Streams

For Informix, displays the maximum number of streams used for database backup operations, which is determined from the ONCONFIG file. The number of streams for backups cannot be set currently from the CommCell Console. Instead, you must set the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter in the \$ONCONFIG file on the Informix client. Also, the number of streams specified by the storage policy must be greater than or equal to the number specified by the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter.

Data Threshold Streams

For Oracle RAC, specifies whether to run the backup job immediately when the total number of reserved streams is greater than or equal to the value in this field. If you click this option, use the space provided to change this value if desired.

Create Storage Policy

Click to launch the Create a Storage Policy wizard. Once the storage policy has been created, it will be displayed in the list of storage policies to which the selected subclient can be associated.

Buffer Size

Use this space to specify the size (in 4 KB pages) of each buffer to be used for building the backup image. The minimum value is 8, and the default value is 1024. If you select value 0, the value of the backbufz database manager configuration parameter will be used as the buffer allocation size.

DATA TRANSFER OPTION

Use this tab to establish the options for data transfer. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Software Compression

Indicates whether software compression for the subclient or instance is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether it is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

• On Client

Click to enable software compression on the client computer.

• On MediaAgent

Click to enable software compression on the MediaAgent computer.

• Use Storage Policy Settings

Click to use the settings enabled on deduplicated storage policy copy.

This option applies when subclient is associated with a storage policy copy that is deduplicated. See Copy Properties (Deduplication) - Advanced tab for compression settings on deduplicated storage policy copy.

• Off

Click to disable software compression.

Note that hardware compression has priority over the software compression. Hardware compression is established in the Data Path Properties dialog box. The above software compression option will take effect when the data path is associated with a disk library, or when hardware compression is disabled in the data path associated with tape libraries.



For non-deduplicated storage policy copy, select **On Client** or **On MediaAgent** options to turn on compression, depending upon your environment.

Resource Tuning

Indicates the processes used by the client to transfer data based and whether bandwidth throttling is enabled or not.

Network Agents

Specifies the number of data pipes/processes that the client uses to transfer data over a network. Increasing this value may provide better throughput if the network and the network configuration in your environment can support it. On non-UNIX computers, the default value is 2 and a maximum of 4 can be established if necessary. On UNIX computers the default value is 1 and a maximum of 2 can be established if necessary.

• Throttle Network Bandwidth (MB/HR)

Specifies whether the backup throughput is controlled or not. (By default this option is not selected and therefore the throughput is not controlled). When selected, use the space to specify a value for the throughput. By default, this is set to 500. The minimum value is 1 and there is no limit to the maximum value. (In this case the backup throughput will be restricted to the maximum bandwidth on the network.)

Use this option to set the backup throughput, based on the network bandwidth in your environment. Use this option to reduce the backup throughput, so that the entire network bandwidth is not consumed, especially in slow links. Increasing this value will end up consuming the bandwidth with the maximum throughput limited to the network bandwidth capability.

Note that throttling is done on a per Network Agent basis.

Application Read Size

This option specifies the amount of application data (such as SQL data, Windows File System data, and virtual machine data) backup jobs will read for each unit transferred to the MediaAgent.

The default value for this options is 64KB; however, this value may be increased to reduce the amount of data read from the given application, which in turn reduces the amount of I/O operations performed against it. As a result, overall backup performance may increase. However, backup memory usage may also increase, which may inadvertently consume additional resources from the application. Thus, it is recommended that this value be set at either the default value or match the block size directed by the application.

DEDUPLICATION

Use this tab to establish the options for deduplication on the subclient. It indicates whether deduplication for the subclient is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether the signature generation (a component of deduplication) is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

Note that deduplication is supported on disk storage devices. So the deduplication options are applicable only if the subclient is associated with a Storage Policy containing disk storage.

On Client

Click to enable signature generation on the client computer.

On MediaAgent

Click to enable signature generation on the MediaAgent computer.

Back to Top

Filters

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or view the filters on the selected subclient.

Include Global Filters

Displays a list of options for enabling or disabling Global Filters which can be used in addition to the filters set at the subclient level to exclude data from data protection operations for this subclient. To change the setting, select one of the following values from the list:

- **OFF** Disables Global Filters for this subclient.
- **ON** Enables Global Filters for this subclient.
- Use Cell Level Policy Enables or disables Global Filters for this subclient depending on whether the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled or disabled on the Control Panel (Global Filters) dialog. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will enable Global Filters on this subclient. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is disabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will disable Global Filters on this subclient.

Exclude the following folders

Displays entries that will be excluded from data protection operations for this subclient.

Exclude the folders that contain the following patterns

Displays wildcard patterns to filter mailboxes from backups. The pattern you enter will be applied to all content defined for the subclient. Enter each wildcard pattern on a separate line. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Sent*	To filter out a folder which begins with Sent, specify the name of the folder and the asterisk * wildcard with no delimiters.
Sent Items\test*	To filter out a subfolder called test, specify the full path including the leader \setminus backslash.
\test	To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader $\$ backslash and the asterisk $*$ wildcard for the first level.

Add

Click to manually add an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Edit

Click to manually edit an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Delete

Click to delete a selected filter entry.

Back to Top

Wildcards

The supported wildcards include:

Wildcards	Description

*	Any number of any characters. For example:
	 Accounting* For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., Accounting Meeting Minutes, Accounting Manager, Accounting Records, etc.). End State a complete the character of the comparison of the following that having with "Accounting Records, etc.).
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Folder, etc.). For more filtering examples using this wildcard character, see the note at the bottom of this page. For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with
	"Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
?	Any one character. For example: user group?
	 For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern beginning with "user_group" followed by any one character, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.). For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_group1, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
[]	Any range of characters. For example:
	 [JT] im For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with "J" or "T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "J" or
	"T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim). [a-k]Lee
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.).
	This wildcard cannot be used for search operations.
[!]	The negation of a range of characters. For example: [!ei]nsure
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	[!a-k]Lee
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
	This wildcard cannot be used for search operations.
<u>⁄&</u> ,	You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in
	the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination:
	combination: [A-K] * Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided
	 combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent*
	 combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example:
	 combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test*
	 combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test* To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader "\" and the asterisk "*" wildcard for the first level, as shown in the following example:
	 combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test* To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader "\" and the asterisk "*" wildcard for

• To filter all directories that begin with a particular word on all drives (e.g. My_Filter), use the global filter:
*:**\My_Filter***
• If you know the drive letter to filter, use the subclient filter as follows:
C:**\My_Filter***
• To filter every directory named "temp" on all drives, use the global filter:
*:**\temp**
Or use the subclient filter:
C:**\temp**
• To filter every "recycler" directory on all drives, use the global filter:
*:**\RECYCLER**
Or use the subclient filter:
C:**\RECYCLER**
Do not use "temp*" when all you want to filter is temp, as it will get "template" and other directories with word "temp".

Back To Top

Encryption

Use this dialog box to select the data encryption options for the selected content. When accessing this dialog box from the Subclient Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to the selected subclient content for operations run from the CommCell Console. When accessing this dialog box from the Instance Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to third-party Command Line operations. The functionality is not propagated to the Subclient Properties Encryption tabs.

None

When selected, no encryption will take place during a data protection operations.

Media Only (MediaAgent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is transmitted without encryption and then encrypted prior to storage. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination client(s). When using pass-phrase security for third-party Command Line operations or DataArchiver Agents stub recovery operations, you must export the pass- phrase to the destination client.

Network and Media (Agent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted before transmission and is stored encrypted on the media. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination clients.

Network Only (Agent Encrypts, MediaAgent Decrypts)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted for transmission and then decrypted prior to storage on the media. During data recovery operations, data is encrypted by the MediaAgent and then decrypted in the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will not be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations.

Script Preview

Click to display the backup script, based on the current subclient configuration, that will be submitted to RMAN when backups are performed for the selected Oracle subclient.

Job Initiation

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Immediate

Run This Job Now

Specifies this job will run immediately.

Schedule

Specifies this job will be scheduled. When you click Configure, the Schedule Details dialog box will open and allow you to configure the schedule pattern.

Result file location on CommServe

This option is only applicable for List Media operations. Specifies the name of the file in which the results of the scheduled list media job must be saved. Click **Browse** to access to the **Directory Browse** dialog box which allows you to select the folder / file in the CommServe computer.

Automatic Copy

Specifies that an auxiliary copy operation will be performed at the interval specified. This operation will occur when new data that must be copied is found on the primary copy.

Interval

The time interval in which the Automatic Copy will be performed. The default interval is 30 minutes.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using qoperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

Operations Supporting Save As Script

Configure Alert

Provides the necessary options to configure the alerts associated with this operation.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure necessary alerts for this operation.

Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Advanced

Click to select additional options.

Script Preview

Click to display the restore script, based on the selected restore options, that will be submitted to RMAN when restores are performed for the selected Oracle client.

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the **Resume** option. This option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.